

## **Introduction**

**This manual explains the operation of the Navigation System. Please read this manual carefully to ensure proper use. Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times.**

The Navigation System is one of the most technologically advanced vehicle accessories ever developed. The system receives satellite signals from the Global Positioning System (GPS) operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Using these signals and other vehicle sensors, the system indicates your present position and assists in locating a desired destination.

The navigation system is designed to select efficient routes from your present starting location to your destination. The system is also designed to direct you to a destination that is unfamiliar to you in an efficient manner. The system uses DENSO maps. The calculated routes may not be the shortest nor the least traffic congested. Your own personal local knowledge or "short cut" may at times be faster than the calculated routes.

The navigation system's database includes Point of Interest categories to allow you to easily select destinations such as restaurants and hotels. If a destination is not in the database, you can enter the street address or a major intersection close to it and the system will guide you there.

The system will provide both a visual map and audio instructions. The audio instructions will announce the distance remaining and the direction to turn in approaching an intersection. These voice instructions will help you keep your eyes on the road and are timed to provide enough time to allow you to maneuver, change lanes or slow down.

Please be aware that all current vehicle navigation systems have certain limitations that may affect their ability to perform properly. The accuracy of the vehicle's position depends on the satellite condition, road configuration, vehicle condition or other circumstances. For more information on the limitations of the system, refer to pages 406 through 407.

**TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION**

## Important information about this manual

For safety reasons, this manual indicates items requiring particular attention with the following marks.

### CAUTION

**This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.**

### NOTICE

**This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your vehicle and its equipment.**

### INFORMATION

**This provides additional information.**

## Safety Instruction

### CAUTION

Drive safely and obey traffic rules.  
Watching this screen and making selections while driving can lead to a serious accident.  
Some map data may be incorrect.  
Read safety instructions in Navigation Manual.

Show Map  
U0001LC

To use this system in the safest possible manner, follow all the safety tips shown below.

This system is intended to assist in reaching the destination and, if used properly, can do so. The driver is solely responsible for the safe operation of your vehicle and the safety of your passengers.

Do not use any feature of this system to the extent it becomes a distraction and prevents safe driving. The first priority while driving should always be the safe operation of the vehicle. While driving, be sure to observe all traffic regulations.

Prior to the actual use of this system, learn how to use it and become thoroughly familiar with it. Read the entire Navigation System Owner's Manual to make sure you understand the system. Do not allow other people to use this system until they have read and understood the instructions in this manual.

For your safety, some functions may become inoperable when driving. Unavailable screen buttons are dimmed. Only when the vehicle is not moving, can the destination and route selection be done.



## CAUTION

- For safety, the driver should not operate the navigation system while he/she is driving. Insufficient attention to the road and traffic may cause an accident.
- While driving, be sure to obey the traffic regulations and maintain awareness of the road conditions. If a traffic sign on the road has been changed, route guidance may not have the updated information such as the direction of a one way street.

While driving, listen to the voice instructions as much as possible and glance at the screen briefly and only when it is safe. However, do not totally rely on voice guidance. Use it just for reference. If the system cannot determine the current vehicle position correctly, there is a possibility of incorrect, late, or non-voice guidance.

The data in the system may occasionally be incomplete. Road conditions, including driving restrictions (no left turns, street closures, etc.) frequently change. Therefore, before following any instruction from the system, look to see whether the instruction can be done safely and legally.

This system cannot warn about such things as the safety of an area, condition of streets, and availability of emergency services. If unsure about the safety of an area, do not drive into it. **Under no circumstances is this system a substitute for the driver's personal judgement.**

Use this system only in locations where it is legal to do so. Some states/provinces may have laws prohibiting the use of video and navigation screens next to the driver.

# Table of Contents

## Quick guide —

— Overview buttons and guidance screen .....	10
— Registering home .....	12
— Registering preset destinations .....	14
— Operation flow: guiding the route .....	16
— Setting home as the destination .....	17
Navigation system function index .....	18
Quick reference (“Destination” screen) .....	20
Quick reference (“Setup” screen) .....	22
Quick reference (“Information” screen) .....	23

Quick  
Guide

## 1 Navigation System: Basic Functions

### ⟨Basic information before operation⟩

Initial screen .....	26
Touch screen operation .....	27
Inputting letters and numbers/List screen operation .....	28
Screen adjustment .....	31
Help icon .....	33
Map screen operation .....	33
Current position display .....	33
Screen scroll operation .....	34
Switching the screens .....	39
Map scale .....	42
Foot print map .....	42
Orientation of the map .....	43
Standard map icons .....	44
Voice command system .....	44
Natural speech information .....	47
Command list .....	49

<b>2</b>	<b>Navigation System: Destination Search</b>	
	<b>Destination search</b>	62
	Selecting the search area	62
	Destination search by Home	64
	Destination search by Preset destinations	64
	Destination search by "Address"	65
	Destination search by "Point of Interest"	69
	Destination search by "Destination Assist"	76
	Destination search by "Previous Destinations"	76
	Destination search by "Address Book"	77
	Destination search by "Emergency"	77
	Destination search by "Intersection & Freeway"	78
	Destination search by "Map"	81
	Destination search by "Coordinates"	82
	Deleting set destinations	82
	Starting route guidance	83
<b>3</b>	<b>Navigation System: Route Guidance</b>	
	Route guidance screen	88
	Typical voice guidance prompts	91
	Distance and time to destination	93
	<b>Setting and deleting destinations</b>	94
	Adding destinations	94
	Reordering destinations	94
	Deleting destinations	95
	<b>Setting route</b>	96
	Detour setting	96
	Route overview	97
	Route preference	99
	Pausing and resuming guidance	101
	<b>Show on map</b>	102
	Display POI* icons	102
	Route trace	106

\*: Point of Interest

<b>4</b>	<b>Navigation System: Memory Points</b>	
	<b>Navigation settings</b>	110
	Setting up the “Home”	111
	Setting up the “Preset Destinations”	113
	Setting up the “Address Book”	116
	Setting up the “Areas to Avoid”	122
	Deleting previous destinations	127
<b>5</b>	<b>Telephone and Information</b>	
	<b>Telephone (Hands-free system for cellular phone)</b>	130
	Enter a Bluetooth® phone	134
	Call on the Bluetooth® phone	139
	Receive on the Bluetooth® phone	146
	Talk on the Bluetooth® phone	146
	<b>Fuel consumption</b>	149
	Past record	149
	Consumption	150
	Calendar	151
<b>6</b>	<b>Lexus Enform with Safety Connect</b>	
	Lexus Enform with Safety Connect—Overview	154
	Destination Assist	157
	eDestination	160
	XM® Sports and Stocks	163
	XM NavWeather™	168
	XM® NavTraffic	173
	Lexus Insider	175

<b>7</b>	<b>Audio/video System</b>	
Quick reference .....	184	
<b>Using your audio/video system</b> .....	187	
Some basics .....	187	
Radio operation .....	196	
Radio operation (XM® Satellite Radio broadcast) .....	200	
CD changer operation .....	206	
DVD changer operation .....	220	
Bluetooth® audio operation .....	245	
USB memory/iPod operation .....	253	
Audio/video remote controls (steering switches) .....	261	
<b>Rear seat entertainment system features</b> .....	263	
Using the radio .....	269	
Using the DVD changer .....	270	
Playing an audio CD/CD text .....	270	
Playing MP3/WMA discs .....	271	
Playing DVD video/audio .....	271	
Using the video mode .....	284	
Changing other settings .....	285	
Audio/video system operating hints .....	287	
<b>8</b>	<b>Air Conditioning</b>	
Automatic air conditioning controls .....	296	
<b>9</b>	<b>Wide View Front &amp; Side Monitor</b>	
Wide view front & side monitor .....	314	
<b>10</b>	<b>Intuitive Parking Assist</b>	
Intuitive parking assist .....	322	

## **11 Setup**

General settings .....	330
Clock settings .....	335
Voice settings .....	337
Navigation settings .....	340
Detailed navigation settings .....	340
<b>Telephone settings .....</b>	<b>349</b>
Volume setting .....	350
Manage phone .....	351
Phonebook .....	359
Setting the phonebook .....	360
Speed dials setting .....	368
Deleting call history .....	375
Setting the voice tag .....	376
Bluetooth® .....	380
Details .....	385
<b>Audio settings .....</b>	<b>388</b>
Select portable player .....	388
Setting Bluetooth® audio .....	390
<b>Vehicle settings .....</b>	<b>395</b>
Maintenance .....	395
Vehicle customization .....	400
Intuitive parking assist setting .....	401
Other settings .....	403

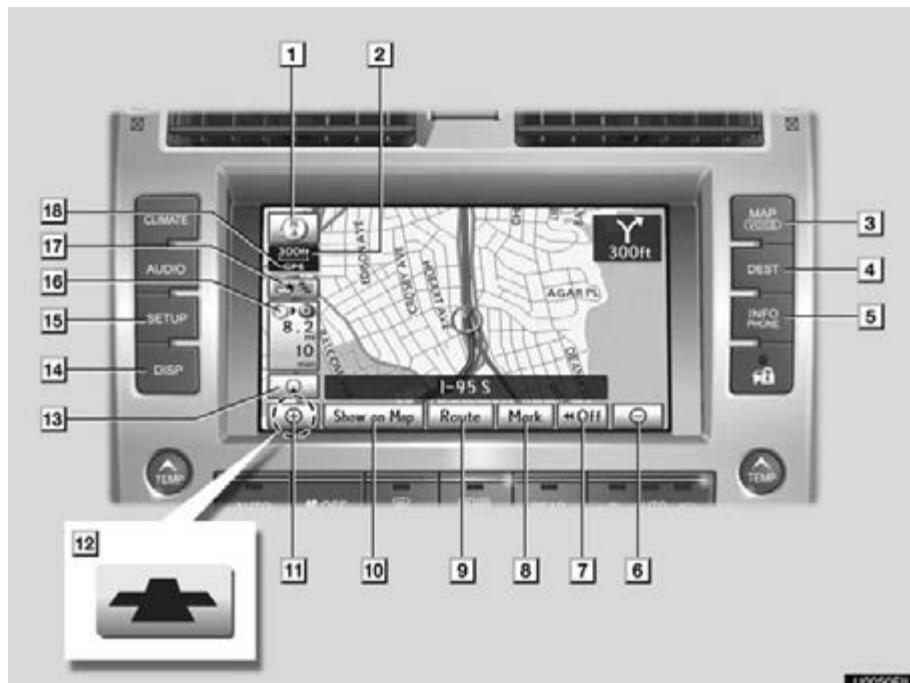
## **12 Appendix**

Limitations of the navigation system .....	406
Map database information and updates .....	408

<b>Index .....</b>	<b>419</b>
--------------------	------------

## Quick guide —

### — Overview buttons and guidance screen



No.	Name	Function	Page
[1]	<b>North-up or heading-up symbol</b>	This symbol indicates a map view with north-up or heading-up. Touching this symbol changes the map orientation.	43
[2]	<b>Scale indicator</b>	This figure indicates the map scale.	42
[3]	<b>“MAP/VOICE” button</b>	Push this button to repeat a guidance voice, cancel the map scroll, start guidance and display the current position.	33
[4]	<b>“DEST” button</b>	Push this button to display the “Destination” screen.	12, 14, 16, 17, 20, 62
[5]	<b>“INFO/PHONE” button</b>	Push this button to display the “Information” screen.	23, 134, 149, 151, 163, 169, 176, 417
[6]	<b>Zoom out button</b>	Touch this button to reduce the map scale.	42

No.	Name	Function	Page
7	“◀◀Off”	Touch this button to obtain a broader view. Some of the buttons on the screen are not displayed. They are displayed again by touching “On▶▶”.	346
8	“Mark”	Touch this button to register the current position or the cursor position as an address book entry.	35
9	“Route”	Touch this button to change the route.	94, 96
10	“Show on Map”	Touch this button to browse information about guidance route, to set the Points of Interest to be displayed on the screen, or to record the route.	102, 173
11	Zoom in button	Touch this button to magnify the map scale.	42
12	Foot print map button	Touch this button to display the foot print map and the building information.	42
13	Screen configuration button	Touch this button to change the screen mode.	39
14	“DISP” button	Push this button to display the “Display” (quality control) screen.	31
15	“SETUP” button	Push this button to display the “Setup” screen. You can change the language from this screen. (See “● Selecting a language” on page 331.)	22, 110, 179, 330, 335, 337, 340, 349, 388, 395, 403
16	Distance and time to destination	Displays the distance, the estimated travel time to the destination, and the estimated arrival time at the destination.	93
17	XM® indicator	This mark is displayed when XM® information is received.	173
18	“GPS” mark (Global Positioning System)	Whenever the vehicle is receiving signals from the GPS, this mark is displayed.	406

## — Registering home



1 Push the “DEST” button.



2 Touch “Go Home”.

If home has not been registered, you can register it by touching “**Go Home**”.



3 Touch “Yes”.



4 There are 4 different methods to search your home.

See “Destination search” on page 62.



**5 Touch "Enter".**

The "Edit Home" screen is displayed.

**6 Touch "OK".**

Registration of home is complete.

You can also register home by pushing the "**SETUP**" button. (See "(a) Registering home" on page 111.)

You can change the name, location, phone number and icon. (See "(b) Editing home" on page 112.)

## — Registering preset destinations



**1 Push the “DEST” button.**



**2 Touch one of the preset destination buttons.**

You can set a preset destination to any preset destination button that has not yet been set.



**3 Touch “Yes”.**



**4 There are 4 different methods to search preset destinations.**

See “Destination search” on page 62.



**5 Touch “Enter”.**

The “Edit Preset Destination” screen is displayed.

Name: PHILLIPS COLLECTION	Edit
Show Name: On	Off
Location: 2012 MASSACHUSETTS ...	Edit
Lat.: N38°54'36"	
Long.: W77°2'42"	
Phone #: 202-833-9740	Edit
Icon:	Edit
OK U0011LC	

**6 Touch “OK”.**

Registration of preset destinations is complete.

You can also register preset destinations by pushing the “**SETUP**” button.  
(See “(a) Registering preset destinations” on page 114.)

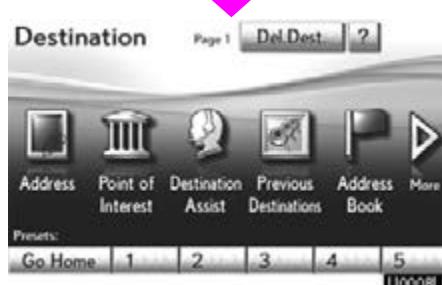
You can change the name, location, phone number and icon. (See “(b) Editing preset destinations” on page 115.)

The registered points can be used on the “Destination” screen. (See “— Destination search by Preset destinations” on page 64.)

## — Operation flow: guiding the route



1 Push the “DEST” button.



2 There are 11 different methods to search destinations.

See “Destination search” on page 62.



3 Touch “Go to ○”.

The navigation system performs a search for the route.



4 Touch “OK”, and start driving.

Routes other than the one recommended can also be selected. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

5 Guidance to the destination is given via voice and on the guidance screen.

## — Setting home as the destination



1 Push the “DEST” button.



2 Touch “Go Home”.

“Go Home” can be used if your home has been registered. (To register “Home”, see “(a) Registering home” on page 111.)



3 Touch “Go to 

The navigation system performs a search for the route.



4 Touch “OK”, and start driving.

Routes other than the one recommended can also be selected. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

5 Guidance to the destination is given via voice and on the guidance screen.

## **Navigation system function index**

### ***⟨Map⟩***

<b>Displaying maps</b>	<b>Page</b>
Viewing the map screen	10
Displaying the current vehicle position	33
Viewing the current position vicinity map	34
Changing the scale	42
Changing the map orientation	43
Displaying Point of Interest	102
Displaying the estimated travel/arrival time to the destination	93
Selecting the dual map screen	39
Viewing foot print map	42
Deleting map screen buttons	346
<b>Searching destination</b>	<b>Page</b>
Searching the destination (by home, Point of Interest, phone #, etc.)	62
Changing the selected search area	62
Operating the map location of the selected destination	83

### ***⟨Route guidance⟩***

<b>Before starting route guidance</b>	<b>Page</b>
Setting the destination	83
Viewing alternative routes	83
Starting route guidance	83
<b>Before starting or during route guidance</b>	<b>Page</b>
Viewing the route	83
Adding destinations	94
Changing the route	96
Displaying the estimated travel/arrival time to the destination	93

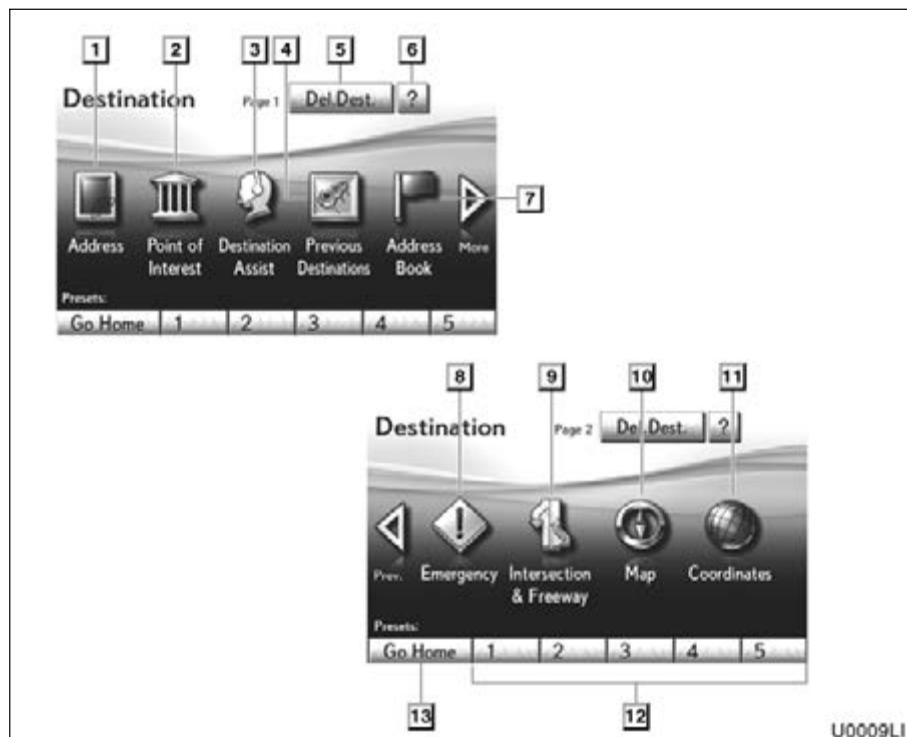
<b>During route guidance</b>	<b>Page</b>
Pausing route guidance	101
Adjusting route guidance volume	338
Deleting the destination	82, 95
Displaying the entire route map	97

## ***<Useful functions>***

<b>Address book</b>	<b>Page</b>
Registering your own address book entries	116
Marking icons on the map	118
<b>Information</b>	<b>Page</b>
Displaying vehicle maintenance	395
Displaying the calendar	151
<b>Hands-free system (for cellular phone)</b>	<b>Page</b>
Initiating Bluetooth®	134
Making a call on the Bluetooth® phone	139
Receiving a call on the Bluetooth® phone	146
<b>Voice command system</b>	<b>Page</b>
Operating the system with your voice	44

## Quick reference (“Destination” screen)

The “Destination” screen allows you to search for a destination. To display the “Destination” screen, push the “DEST” button.



**[1] “Address”**

A house number and the street address can be input by using the input keys. .... 65

**[4] “Previous Destinations”**

A destination can be selected from any of the last 100 previously set destinations and from the previous starting point. .... 76

**[2] “Point of Interest”**

Select one of the many Points of Interest that have already been stored in the system's database. .... 69

**[5] “Del. Dest.”**

Set destinations can be deleted. .... 82

**[3] “Destination Assist”**

Provides you with live assistance finding destinations via the Lexus Enform response center. .... 76, 157

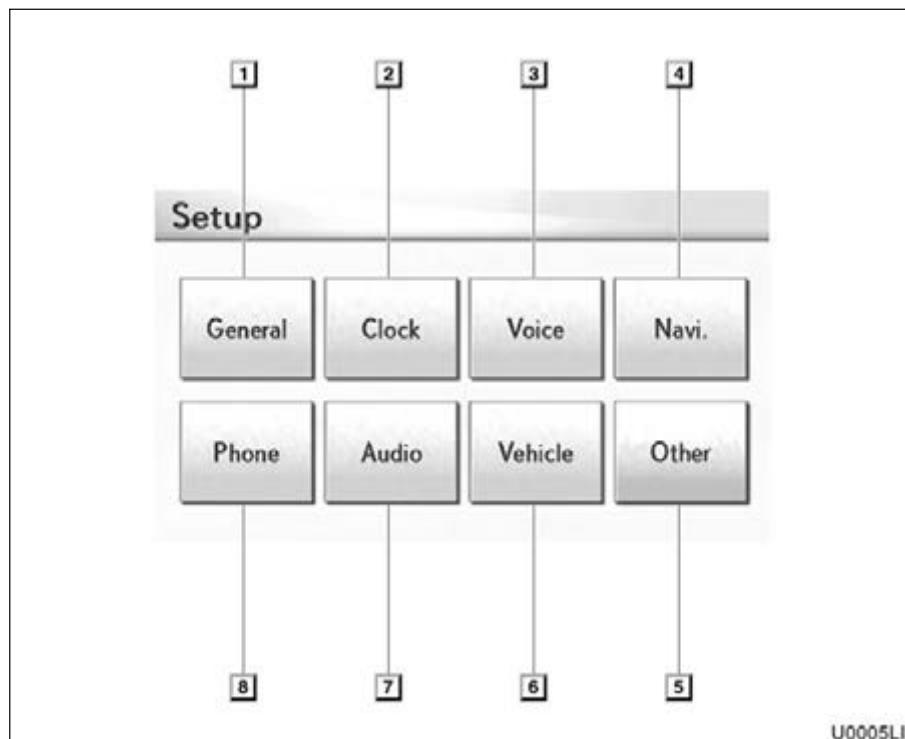
**[6] “?”**

Function help for the “Destination” screen can be viewed on this screen. .... 33

<b>[7] “Address Book”</b>	
The desired location can be selected from a registered entry in the “Address book”. (To register address book entries, see “(a) Registering address book entries” on page 117.) .....	77
<b>[8] “Emergency”</b>	
One of the four categories of emergency service points that are already stored in the system’s database can be selected. .....	77
<b>[9] “Intersection &amp; Freeway”</b>	
The names of two intersecting streets or a freeway (interstate) entrance or exit can be entered. This is helpful if only the general vicinity, not the specific address, is known. .....	78
<b>[10] “Map”</b>	
A destination can be selected simply by touching the location on the displayed map. .....	81
<b>[11] “Coordinates”</b>	
A destination can be set using latitudes and longitudes as coordinates. .....	82
<b>[12] Preset destination buttons</b>	
One of 5 preset destination points can be selected by touching the screen directly. If a preset destination point has not been registered, a message will be displayed and the setting screen will automatically appear. To use this function, it is necessary to set the “Preset Destination”. (To register a “Preset Destination”, see “(a) Registering preset destinations” on page 114.) .....	64
<b>[13] “Go Home”</b>	
A personal home address can be selected without entering the address each time. If “Home” has not been registered, a message will be displayed and the setting screen will automatically appear. To use this function, it is necessary to set a “Home” address. (To register “Home”, see “(a) Registering home” on page 111.) .....	64

## Quick reference (“Setup” screen)

The items shown on the “Setup” screen can be set. To display the “Setup” screen, push the “SETUP” button.



**[1] “General”**

Settings are available for language selection, operation sounds, automatic screen change, etc. .... 330

**[2] “Clock”**

Used for changing settings for time zones, daylight saving time, etc. .... 335

**[3] “Voice”**

Voice guidance can be set. .... 337

**[4] “Navi.”**

Settings are available for average cruising speed, displayed screen contents, POI icon categories, etc. .... 340

**[5] “Other”**

Settings are available for Lexus Insider, XM® Sports and Stocks. .... 403

**[6] “Vehicle”**

Settings are available for vehicle information such as maintenance information. .... 395

**[7] “Audio”**

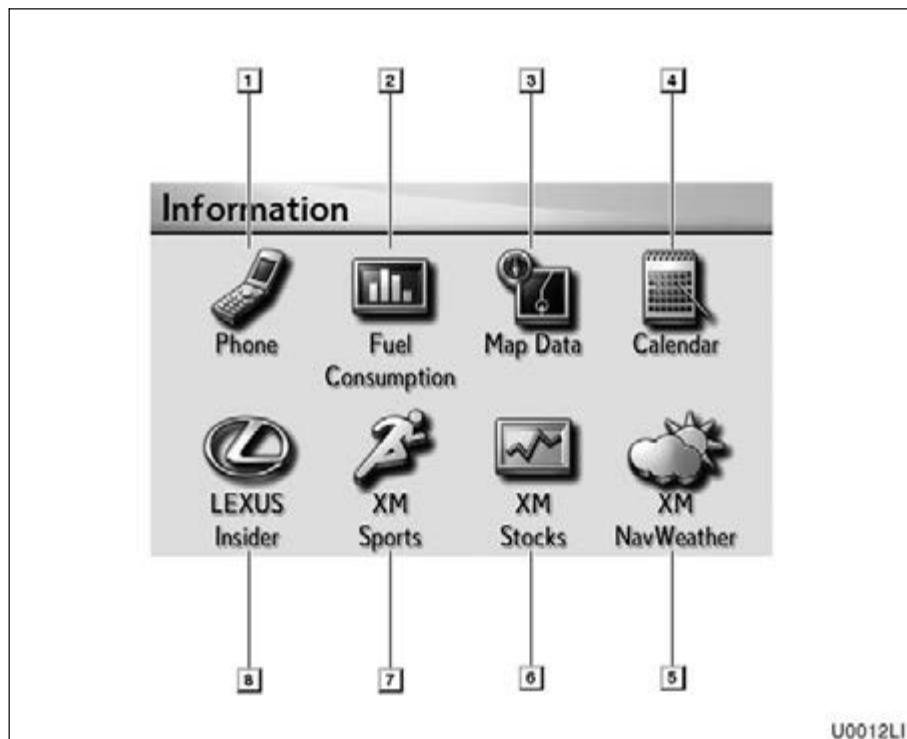
Settings are available for portable audio devices, Bluetooth® audio devices, etc. .... 388

**[8] “Phone”**

Bluetooth® phones and phone numbers can be registered, and the receiver volume can be adjusted. .... 349

## Quick reference (“Information” screen)

This screen can be used to display the calendar and information on operation of the hands-free phone, etc. To display the “Information” screen, push the “INFO/PHONE” button.



<b>[1] “Phone”</b> To view hands free phone information. ....	134	<b>[5] “XM NavWeather”</b> To display the “XM NavWeather” screen. ....	168
<b>[2] “Fuel Consumption”</b> Fuel consumption is displayed. ....	149	<b>[6] “XM Stocks”</b> To display the “XM Stocks” screen. ....	163
<b>[3] “Map Data”</b> Displays information regarding the map data disc version or coverage area. ....	417	<b>[7] “XM Sports”</b> To display the “XM Sports” screen. ....	163
<b>[4] “Calendar”</b> To view calendar. ....	151	<b>[8] “LEXUS Insider”</b> To display the “LEXUS Insider” screen. ....	175



# SECTION 1

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

### Basic information before operation

● Initial screen .....	26
● Touch screen operation .....	27
● Inputting letters and numbers/List screen operation .....	28
● Screen adjustment .....	31
● Help icon .....	33
● Map screen operation .....	33
Current position display .....	33
Screen scroll operation .....	34
Switching the screens .....	39
Map scale .....	42
Foot print map .....	42
Orientation of the map .....	43
Standard map icons .....	44
● Voice command system .....	44
Natural speech information .....	47
Command list .....	49

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

### Initial screen



When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the initial screen will be displayed and the system will begin operating.



After a few seconds, the "CAUTION" screen will be displayed.

#### CAUTION

Drive safely and obey traffic rules.  
Watching this screen and making selections while driving can lead to a serious accident.  
Some map data may be incorrect.  
Read safety instructions in Navigation Manual.

Show Map  
U1002LC

After about 5 seconds, the "CAUTION" screen automatically switches to the map screen. When touching "Show Map" or pushing the "MAP/VOICE" button, the map screen is displayed.

While the "CAUTION" screen is displayed, the "DEST" or "SETUP" button cannot be operated. And if the "Calendar" button on the "Information" screen is touched, the screen will change back to the "CAUTION" screen. In about 5 seconds, or when the "MAP/VOICE" button is pushed or the "Show Map" is touched, the "CAUTION" screen will change to the map screen.

- **Maintenance information**

This system informs about when to replace certain parts or components and shows dealer information (if registered) on the screen.

When the vehicle reaches a previously set driving distance or date specified for a scheduled maintenance check, the "Information" screen will be displayed when the navigation system is in operation.



To disable this screen, touch "Do Not Display This Message Again". This screen goes off if the screen is not operated for several seconds.

To prevent this information screen from being displayed again, touch "Do Not Display This Message Again".

To register "Maintenance information", see "—Maintenance" on page 395.

## Touch screen operation

This system is operated mainly by the touch screen buttons on the screen.

### NOTICE

- ***To prevent damaging the screen, lightly touch the screen buttons with your finger.***
- ***Do not use objects other than your finger to touch the screen.***
- ***Wipe off fingerprints using a glass cleaning cloth. Do not use chemical cleaners to clean the screen, as they may damage the touch screen.***

### INFORMATION

- ***If the system does not respond to a touch on a touch screen button, move the finger away from the screen and then touch it again.***
- ***Dimmed touch screen buttons cannot be operated.***
- ***The displayed image may become darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the display is cold.***
- ***Under extremely cold conditions, the map may not be displayed and the data input by a user may be deleted. Also, the touch screen buttons may be harder than usual to depress.***
- ***When you look at the screen through polarized material such as polarized sunglasses, the screen may be dark and hard to see. If so, look at the screen from different angles, adjust the screen settings on the "Display" screen, or take off your sunglasses.***

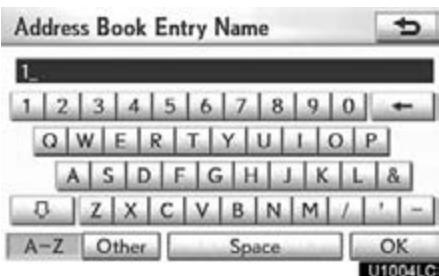
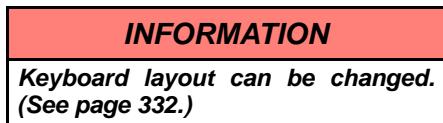
## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

### Inputting letters and numbers/ numbers/List screen operation

When searching for an address or a name, or entering, letters and numbers can be input via the screen.

- To input letters and numbers

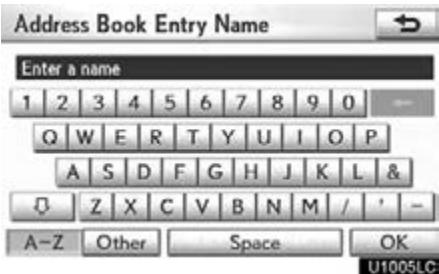
To display the alphabet keys, touch "A-Z".



Enter letters by touching the keys directly.

: Touching this button erases one letter. By holding this button, letters will continue to be erased.

On certain letter entry screens, letters can be entered in upper or lower case.



: To enter in lower case.

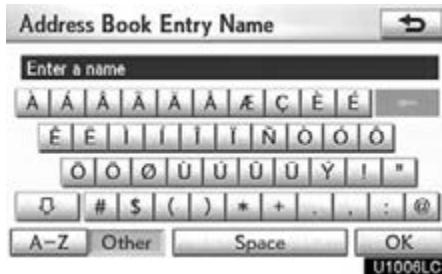
: To enter in upper case.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

- To input symbols

To display symbol keys, touch “Other”.



Enter symbols by touching the symbol keys directly.

: Touching this button erases one letter. By holding this button, letters will continue to be erased.

- To display the list



To search for an address or a name, touch “OK”. Matching items from the database are listed even if the entered address or name is incomplete.

If the number of matches is five or less, the list is displayed without touching “OK”.



### INFORMATION

*The number of matching items is shown to the right side of the screen. If the number of matching items is more than 999, the system displays “\*\*\*” on the screen.*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

### ● List screen operation

When a list is displayed, use the appropriate button to scroll through the list.



To shift to the next or previous page.



Touch or to scroll through the displayed list.



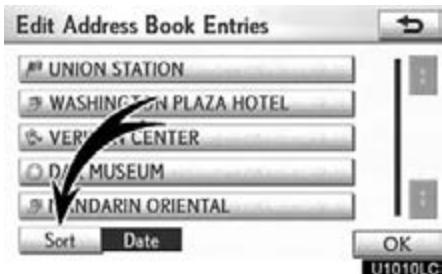
This expresses a displayed screen position.



If appears to the right of the item name, the complete name is too long for the display. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to scroll to the beginning of the name.

### ● Sorting

The order of a list displayed on the screen can be rearranged.



#### 1. Touch "Sort".



#### 2. Touch the desired sorting criteria.

Sorting criteria are as follows:

“Distance”: To sort in the order of distance from your current location.

“Date”: To sort in the order of the date.

“Category”: To sort in the order of the category.

“Icon”: To sort in the order of the icons.

“Name”: To sort in order by name.

## Screen adjustment

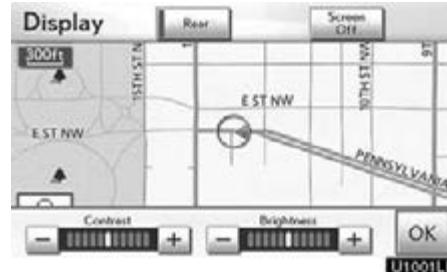
You can adjust the contrast, brightness, color and tone of the screen. You can also turn the display off, and change the screen to either day or night mode.

- **Contrast, brightness, color and tone adjustment**

The contrast, brightness, color and tone of the screen can be adjusted depending on the brightness of your surroundings. You can also turn the display off.



1. Push the “DISP” button.



### Contrast and brightness adjustment

2. Touch the desired button to adjust contrast and brightness.

“Contrast” “+”: Strengthens the contrast of the screen.

“Contrast” “-”: Weakens the contrast of the screen.

“Brightness” “+”: Brightens the screen.

“Brightness” “-”: Darkens the screen.

3. After adjusting the screen, touch “OK”.

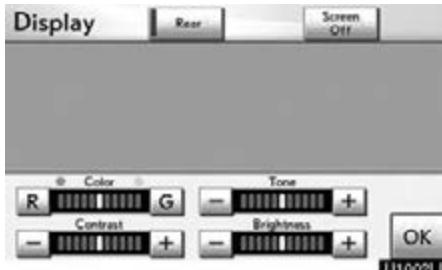
If your vehicle is equipped with the rear seat entertainment system, the rear screen turns on or off when “Rear” is touched.

The screen goes off when “Screen Off” is touched. To turn the display screen back on, push the “DISP” button again.

### INFORMATION

*When you do not touch any button on the “Display” screen for 20 seconds, the previous screen will be displayed.*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS



### Color and tone adjustment

1. Touch the desired button to adjust color and tone.

You can adjust the color and the tone while the DVD video, DVD audio and video CD are being played.

“Color” “R”: Strengthens the red color of the screen.

“Color” “G”: Strengthens the green color of the screen.

“Tone” “+”: Strengthens the tone of the screen.

“Tone” “-”: Weakens the tone of the screen.

2. After adjusting the screen touch “OK”.

If your vehicle is equipped with the rear seat entertainment system, the rear screen turns on or off when “Rear” is touched.

The screen goes off when “Screen Off” is touched. To turn the display screen back on, push the “DISP” button again.

- Changing between day mode and night mode

Depending on the position of the headlight switch, the screen changes to day mode or night mode.



To display the screen in day mode even with the headlight switch on, touch “Day Mode” on the adjustment screen for brightness and contrast control.

If the screen is set in day mode with the headlight switch turned on, this condition is memorized in the system even with the engine is turned off.

In the following conditions, the displays condition is not changed to night mode even if headlight switch is turned on.

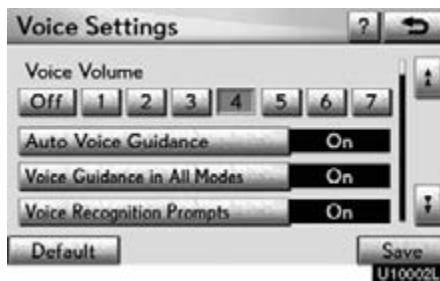
- The instrument panel light control switch is adjusted full brightness.
- The vehicle is in a bright area such as daytime.

### INFORMATION

*When you do not touch any button on the “Display” screen for 20 seconds, the previous screen will be displayed.*

## Help icon

When  appears on the screen, an explanation of the function can be displayed.



1. Touch .



2. Touch the button of the desired function.



## Map screen operation — Current position display

When starting the navigation system, the current position is displayed first.

This screen displays the current vehicle position and a map of the surrounding local area.



The current vehicle position mark (1) appears in the center or bottom center of the map screen.

A street name will appear on the bottom of the screen, depending on the scale of the map (2).

You can return to this map screen that shows your current position at any time from any screen by pushing the "MAP/VOICE" button.

While driving, the current vehicle position mark is fixed on the screen and the map moves.

The current position is automatically set as the vehicle receives signals from the GPS (Global Positioning System). If the current position is not correct, it is automatically corrected after the vehicle receives signals from the GPS.

### INFORMATION

- After the battery disconnection, or on a new vehicle, the current position may not be correct. As soon as the system receives signals from the GPS, the correct current position is displayed.
- To correct the current position manually, see page 346.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

### — Screen scroll operation

When any point on the map is touched, that point moves to the center of the screen and is shown by the cursor mark (1).



Use the scroll feature to move the desired point to the center of the screen for looking at a point on the map that is different from the current position of the vehicle.

If the finger is continuously held on the screen, the map will continue scrolling in that direction until the finger is removed.

A street name, city name, etc. of the touched point will be shown, depending on the scale of the map (2). Distance from the current position to  $\oplus$  will also be shown (3).

After the screen is scrolled, the map remains centered at the selected location until another function is activated. The current vehicle position mark will continue to move along your actual route and may move off the screen. When the “MAP/VOICE” button is pushed, the current vehicle position mark returns to the center of the screen and the map moves as the vehicle proceeds along the designated route.

- To set the cursor position as a destination

A specific point on the map can be set as a destination using the scroll function.



#### Touch “Enter” (1).

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

#### INFORMATION

*When the scroll feature is used, the current vehicle position mark may disappear from the screen. Move the map with a scroll again or push the “MAP/VOICE” button to return to the current vehicle position map location display.*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

- To register the cursor position as an address book entry

Address book entry registration enables easy access to a specific point.



Touch “Mark”.

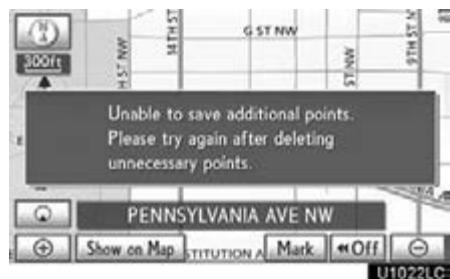
When you touch “Mark”, the following screen appears for a few seconds, and then the map screen returns.



The registered point is shown by  on the map.

To change the icon or name, etc., see “(b) Editing address book entries” on page 118.

Up to 100 address book entries can be registered. If there is an attempt to register more than 100 address book entries, an error message will appear.



## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

- To see information about the icon where the cursor is set



To display information about an icon, set the cursor on it.

### POI INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on a POI icon, the name and “Info.” are displayed at the top of the screen.



Touch “Info.”.



Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

If “Enter (○)” is touched, the position of the cursor is set as a destination.

If there is already a set destination, “Go to (○)” and “Add to Route” are displayed.

“Go to (○)”: To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

“Add to Route”: To add a destination.

To register this POI as an address book entry, touch “Mark”. (See page 117.)

If is touched, the registered telephone number can be called.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

### INFORMATION

*The desired Point of Interest can be displayed on the map screen. (See “—Display POI icons” on page 102.)*

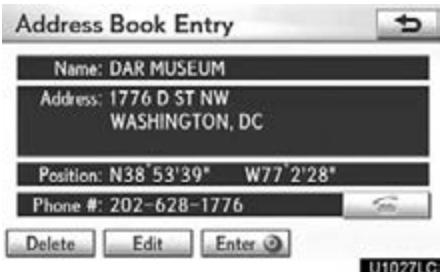
### ADDRESS INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on an address book entry icon, the name and “Info.” are displayed at the top of the screen.



Touch “Info.”.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS



Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

If "Enter (●)" is touched, the position of the cursor is set as a destination.

If there is already a set destination, "Go to (●)" and "Add to Route" are displayed.

"**Go to (●)**": To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

"**Add to Route**": To add a destination.

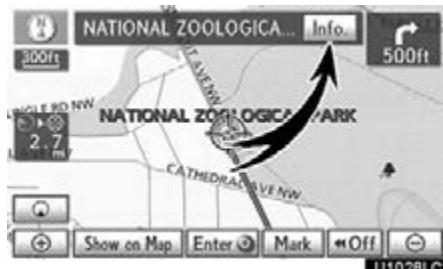
To edit an address book entry, touch "**Edit**". (See "(b) Editing address book entries" on page 118.)

To delete an address book entry, touch "**Delete**".

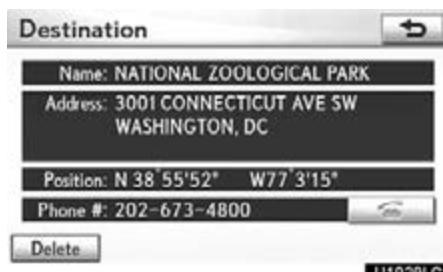
If is touched, the registered telephone number can be called.

### DESTINATION INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on a destination icon, the name and "Info." are displayed on the top of the screen.



Touch "Info."



Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

To delete a destination, touch "**Delete**".

If is touched, the registered telephone number can be called.

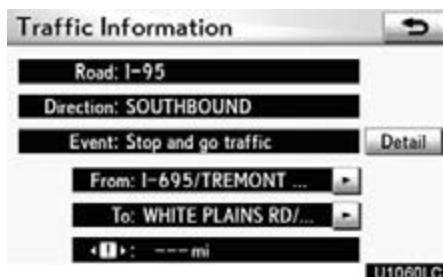
## — Switching the screens

### XM® NavTraffic TEXT INFORMATION

When you touch the XM® NavTraffic icon on the map, the XM® NavTraffic info. bar will appear on the upper part of the screen.

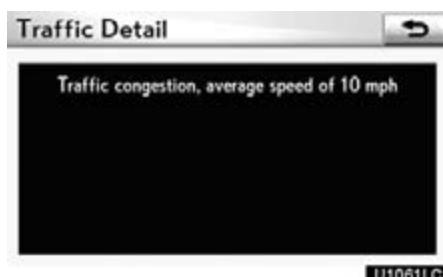


Touch “Info.”.

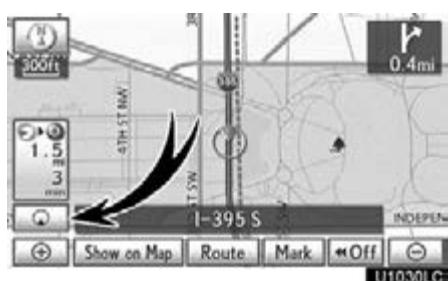


Traffic information is displayed on the screen.

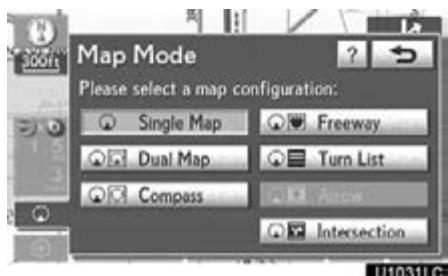
Touch “Detail” to display detailed traffic event information.



Any one of the screen configurations can be selected.



1. Touch this button to display the following screen.



2. To select the desired screen configuration, touch one of the following buttons.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

Depending on the conditions, certain screen configuration buttons cannot be selected.



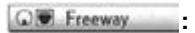
To display the single map screen.  
(See page 40.)



To display the dual map screen.  
(See page 41.)



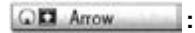
To display the compass mode screen. (See page 41.)



To display the freeway screen.  
(See page 88.)



To display the turn list screen.  
(See page 90.)



To display the arrow screen. (See page 90.)



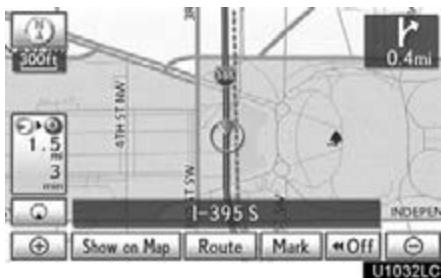
To display the intersection guidance screen or the guidance screen on the freeway. (See page 89.)

- **Screen configurations**

### SINGLE MAP

This is a regular map screen.

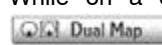
While on a different screen, touching will display the single map screen.

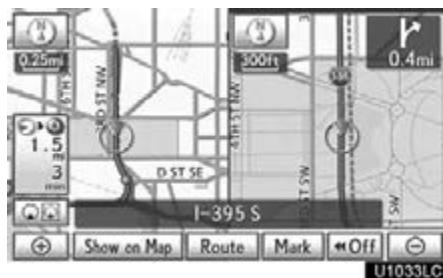


The screen shows the single map.

#### DUAL MAP

A map can be displayed split in two.

While on a different screen, touching  will display the dual map screen.



The screen shows the dual map. The map on the left is the main map.

The right side map can be edited by touching any specific point on the right side map.



This screen can perform the following procedures:

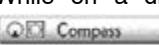
1. Changing the map scale
2. Displaying the POI icon
3. Show XM® NavTraffic Info. (See page 173.)
4. Changing the orientation of the map

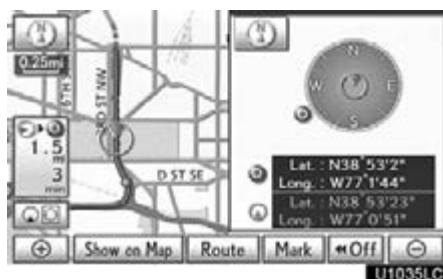
**Touch "OK" when you complete editing.**

The screen returns to the dual map screen.

#### COMPASS MODE

Current vehicle position is indicated with a compass.

While on a different screen, touching  will display the compass mode screen.



Information about the destination and current position, as well as a compass, is displayed on the screen.

The destination mark is displayed in the direction of the destination. When driving refer to the longitude and latitude coordinates, and the compass, to make sure that your vehicle is headed in the direction of the destination.

#### INFORMATION

***When the vehicle travels out of the coverage area, the guidance screen changes to the compass mode screen.***

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

### — Map scale



Touch or to change the scale of the map display. The scale bar and indicator at the bottom of the screen indicates the map scale menu. The scale range is 150 feet (50 m) to 250 miles (400 km).

Touch or until the scale bar changes normally. By continuing to touch the button, the scale bar changes smoothly.

The scale of the map display can be changed by touching the scale bar directly. It is not available while driving.

The map scale is displayed under the north-up symbol or heading-up symbol at the top left of the screen.

#### INFORMATION

When the map scale is at the maximum range of 250 miles (400 km), is not shown. When the map scale is at the minimum range of 150 feet (50 m), is not shown. In areas where the foot print map is available the map scale changes from to when at the minimum range.

### — Foot print map

For the area which is covered by the foot print map (Some areas in the following cities: Detroit, Chicago, N.Y., L.A), you can switch to the foot print map on a scale of 75 feet (25 m).

#### ● To switch to the foot print map

changes into when the map is scaled down to 150 feet (50 m).



To display the foot print map, touch .

To delete the foot print map display, touch .

#### INFORMATION

- If the map or the current position is moved to the area which is not covered by the foot print map, the screen scale automatically changes to 150 feet (50 m).
- On the foot print map, a one way street is displayed by .
- It is not possible to perform scrolling on the foot print map while driving.

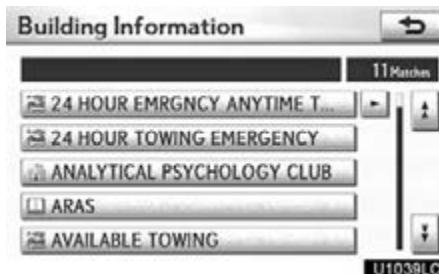
Building footprints in the database were created and provided by MAPMASTER.

- **To display building information**

Information is available only for buildings for which information is recorded on the map data.



**Touch “Info.” while the foot print map is displayed.**



Details of POIs in some buildings may be displayed.

For detailed POI information, touch the building name. You can see details of the selected POIs.

### — Orientation of the map

The orientation of the map can be changed from North-up to Heading-up by touching the orientation symbol at the top left of the screen.

**Touch or .**



#### ► North-up screen



#### ► Heading-up screen

**North-up symbol**

Regardless of the direction of vehicle travel, North is always up.

**Heading-up symbol**

The direction of vehicle travel is always up. A red arrow indicates North.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

### — Standard map icons —

Icon	Name
	Island
	Park
	Industry
	Business facility
	Airport
	Military
	University
	Hospital
	Stadium
	Shopping mall
	Golf

### — Voice command system —

The voice command system enables you to operate the navigation system, audio/video system, air conditioning system and hands-free system by giving a command.



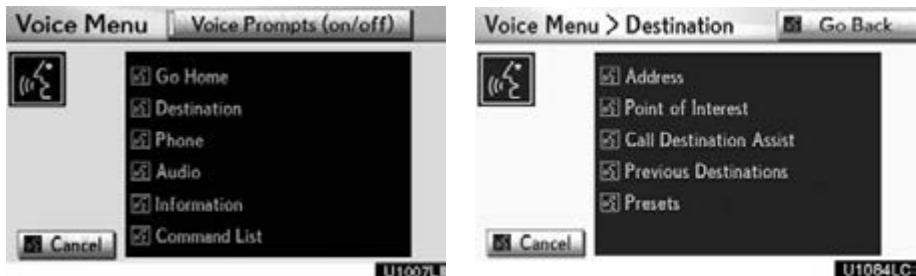
#### 1. Push the talk switch.

After a beep sounds, the "Voice Menu" screen is displayed.

#### INFORMATION

- *Voice guidance for the voice command system can be skipped by pushing the talk switch.*
- *The voice recognition prompt can be set to on or off when "Voice Prompts (on/off)" is touched. This setting can also be changed on the "Voice Settings" screen. (See page 337.)*
- *When "Voice Prompts (on/off)" is touched, voice recognition will be temporarily suspended. Push the talk switch again.*
- *Voice guidance can be canceled by setting voice prompts to off. Use this setting when you want to say a command immediately after pushing the talk switch.*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS



### 2. After a beep sounds, say the command of your choice.

Voice commands are marked with  .

Some commonly used commands are displayed on the screen. Speak the commands as displayed on the screen.

If you want to check the all command list, say "**Command list**" to display the command list screen. (See "— Command list" on page 49.)

### 3. Following voice guidance, say the command displayed on the screen.

If a desired outcome is not shown, or if no choices are available, say "**Go back**" or touch "**Go Back**" to return to the previous screen.

To cancel voice command recognition, say "**Cancel**", touch "**Cancel**", or push and hold the talk switch.

If the navigation system does not respond or the confirmation screen does not disappear, please push the talk switch and try again.

If a voice command cannot be recognized within 6 seconds, the voice guidance system will say "Pardon?" ("Command not recognized." will be displayed on the screen) and voice command reception will restart.

If a voice command cannot be recognized two consecutive times, the voice guidance system will say "Paused. To restart voice recognition, push the talk switch.", then be suspended.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS



### ► Microphone

It is unnecessary to speak directly into the microphone when giving a command.

### INFORMATION

- Wait for the confirmation beep before speaking a command.
- Voice commands may not be recognized if :
  - Spoken too quickly
  - Spoken at a low or high volume
  - The windows or moon roof are open
  - Passengers are talking while voice commands are spoken
  - The air conditioning speed is set high
  - Turning the air conditioning vents towards the microphone
- In the following conditions, the system may not recognize the command properly and using voice commands may not be possible.
  - The command is not correct or clear.  
*Note that certain words, accents, or speech patterns may be difficult for the system to recognize.*
  - There are some noises such as wind noise, etc.

## — Natural speech information (English only)

- **Voice command example: Searching for a route to your home.**

- 1. Push the talk switch.**

- 2. Say “Go home”.**

If a home address is not registered, the voice guidance system will say “Your home is not set” and you will be prompted to enter a home address. (See page 111.)

When the voice command is recognized, a map of the area around your home is displayed.



- 3. Touch “Enter” or say “Enter”, and the system starts searching for a route to your home.**

To return to the “Voice Menu” screen, say “**Go back**” or touch “**Go Back**”.

Touch “**Cancel**” or say “**Cancel**”, and the voice command system will be canceled.

Due to natural language speech recognition technology, this system enables recognition of a command when spoken naturally. However, the system cannot recognize every variation of each command. In some situations, it is possible to omit the command for the procedure and directly state the desired operation.

- **Voice recognition top screen expression examples**

Command	Expression examples
Go Home	<i>Take me home. Let's go home.</i>
Destination	<i>I'd like to set a destination.</i>
Phone	<i>I'd like to make a call. I need to use the phone. Bring up the phone menu.</i>
Audio	<i>Audio menu, please.</i>
Information	<i>Let me see the information menu. Give us the information menu, please.</i>
Command List	<i>Show me the voice command list.</i>

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

- Expression examples for each function

In some situations, it is possible to omit a command for each procedure and to say the desired operation directly.

### EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE "Destination" SCREEN

Normal command recognition —

*Destination>Point of Interest>Near Here>Gas>* The gas stations near the current location will be listed.

Natural speech recognition —

*Destination> What gas stations are nearby?>* The gas stations near the current location will be listed.

### EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE "Phone Menu" SCREEN (when making a call using a phonebook)

Normal command recognition —

*Phone>Dial by Name>Bob>mobile>* The phone number will be displayed.

Natural speech recognition —

*Phone>Call to Bob on his mobile.>* The phone number will be displayed.

#### INFORMATION

**Natural speech example:**

**"Get me Rob Brown on the phone."**

**"Please place a call to John on his mobile."**

### INFORMATION

**Natural speech example:**

**"Where's the nearest Mexican restaurant?"**

**"Where is the closest ATM?"**

### EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE "Phone Menu" SCREEN (when making a call by saying a phone number)

Normal command recognition —

*Phone>Dial by Number>123-456-789>* The phone number will be displayed.

Natural speech recognition —

*Phone>Call to 123-456-789.>* The phone number will be displayed.

#### INFORMATION

**The above mentioned command for making a call can also be recognized on the voice recognition top screen.**

**Natural speech example:**

**"I'd like to place a call to 123-456-789."**

**"I want to buzz 123-456-789, please."**

## — Command list

### EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE “Information Menu” SCREEN

Normal command recognition —

*Information>XM Nav Weather>Los Angeles, California>* The weather information will be displayed.

Natural speech recognition —

*Information>Give me a weather report for Los Angeles, California.>* The weather information will be displayed.



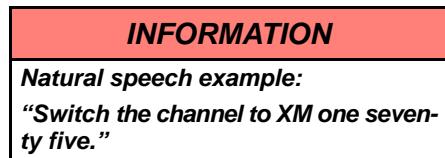
### EXPRESSION EXAMPLES WITH THE “Audio Menu” SCREEN (when the audio source is in satellite radio mode)

Normal command recognition —

*Audio>Select Channel Number>90>* The channel will be changed to the one selected.

Natural speech recognition —

*Audio>Play channel ninety, please>* The channel will be changed to the one selected.



### VOICE RECOGNITION TOP SCREEN EXPRESSION EXAMPLES

Normal command recognition —

*Command List>Dual Map>* The map will be displayed in dual map mode.

Natural speech recognition —

*Switch to dual map mode.>* The map will be displayed in dual map mode.

The system has a voice recognition command list. You can operate the voice recognition system by saying any command from the displayed command list.

#### 1. Push the talk switch.

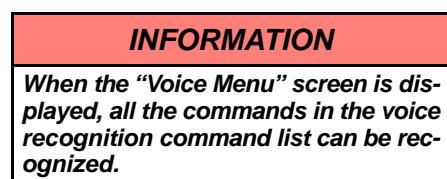


#### 2. Say “Command list”.



#### 3. Say the command of your choice to operate the system.

To confirm commands on the screen, touch or to scroll through the command list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.



## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

- Voice command example: Changing map screen

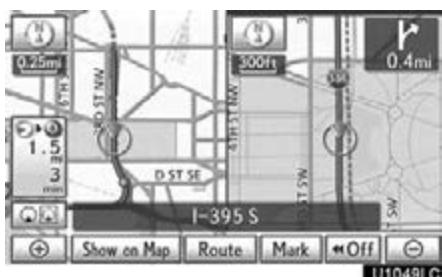
1. Push the talk switch.
2. Say “*Command list*”.



### 3. Say “*Dual map*”.

To confirm commands on the screen, touch or to scroll through the command list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

When or is touched, push the talk switch again and say the command.



The screen shows the dual map.

- Voice command example: Changing map scale

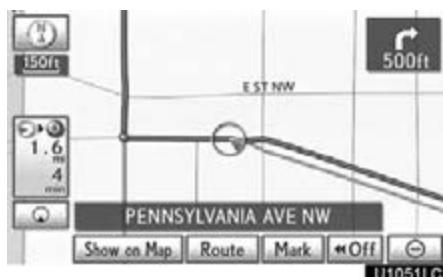
1. Push the talk switch.
2. Say “*Command list*”.



### 3. Say “*Zoom in*” or “*Zoom out*”.

To confirm commands on the screen, touch or to scroll through the command list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

When or is touched, push the talk switch again and say the command.



The scale of the map display is changed.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

### COMMAND LIST

Change map mode	
Command	Action
Map	Shows current position map.
Dual map	Changes map to dual mode.
Single map	Changes map to single mode.
Compass mode	Changes map to compass mode.
Change map scale	
Command	Action
Zoom in	Zoom in.
Zoom out	Zoom out.
Right map zoom in	Zooms right map in.
Right map zoom out	Zooms right map out.
Change map orientation	
Command	Action
North up	Changes map bearing to north up.
Heading up	Changes map bearing to heading up.
Map direction	Changes map bearing to another direction.
Right map north up	Changes right map bearing to north up.
Right map heading up	Changes right map bearing to heading up.
Right map direction	Changes right map bearing to another direction.
Change guidance mode	
Command	Action
Arrow mode	Changes guidance screen to arrow mode.
Turn list mode	Changes guidance screen to turn list mode.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

Change guidance mode	
Command	Action
Freeway mode	Changes guidance screen to freeway mode.
Intersection mode	Changes guidance screen to Intersection mode.
Set a destination	
Command	Action
Previous start point	Calculates route to previous start point.
Save a point on the map	
Command	Action
Mark this point	Marks the point on the map.
Change route	
Command	Action
Quick route	Changes route to quick route.
Short route	Changes route to short route.
Alternate route	Changes route to alternate route.
Detour	Calculates detour route.
Detour entire route	Calculates detour entire route.
Review route	
Command	Action
Route overview	Shows entire route.
Next destination map	Shows position of next destination.
First destination map	Shows position of first destination.
Second destination map	Shows position of second destination.
Third destination map	Shows position of third destination.
Fourth destination map	Shows position of fourth destination.
Fifth destination map	Shows position of fifth destination.
Final destination map	Shows position of final destination.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

Delete destination	
Command	Action
Delete next destination	Deletes position of next destination.
Delete final destination	Deletes position of final destination.
Delete all destinations	Deletes position of all destination.
Guidance options	
Command	Action
Pause guidance	Pauses the guidance.
Resume guidance	Resumes the guidance.
Repeat guidance	Repeat voice guidance.
Louder	Turns volume up 1 level.
Softer	Turns volume down 1 level.
Traffic information	
Command	Action
Traffic information	Displays traffic information.
Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW GAS	Displays GAS STATION icons.
SHOW PARKING	Displays PARKING icons.
SHOW SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE	Displays SERVICE & MAINTENANCE icons.
SHOW DEALERSHIPS	Displays DEALERSHIP icons.
SHOW LEXUS	Displays LEXUS DEALERSHIP icons.
SHOW TOYOTA	Displays TOYOTA DEALERSHIP icons.
SHOW PARTS STORES	Displays PARTS STORE icons.
SHOW ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE	Displays ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE icons.
SHOW AUTOMOBILE CLUBS	Displays AUTOMOBILE CLUB icons.
SHOW CAR RENTAL AGENCIES	Displays CAR RENTAL AGENCY icons.
SHOW CAR WASHES	Displays CAR WASH icons.
SHOW OTHER AUTOMOTIVE	Displays OTHER AUTOMOTIVE STORE icons.
SHOW DINING	Displays DINING icons.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW AMERICAN DINING	Displays AMERICAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW BAKERIES AND DELIS	Displays BAKERY & DELI icons.
SHOW BARBECUE AND GRILL DINING	Displays BARBECUE & GRILL RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW CAJUN AND CARIBBEAN DINING	Displays CAJUN & CARIBBEAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW CHINESE DINING	Displays CHINESE RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW COFFEE HOUSES	Displays COFFEE HOUSE icons.
SHOW FAST FOOD	Displays FAST FOOD icons.
SHOW FRENCH DINING	Displays FRENCH RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW GREEK DINING	Displays GREEK RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW INDIAN DINING	Displays INDIAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW ICE CREAM AND CANDY	Displays ICE CREAM & CANDY icons.
SHOW ITALIAN DINING	Displays ITALIAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW JAPANESE DINING	Displays JAPANESE RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW KOREAN DINING	Displays KOREAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW LATIN AND SOUTH AMERICAN DINING	Displays LATIN & SOUTH AMERICAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW MIDDLE EASTERN DINING	Displays MIDDLE EASTERN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW MEXICAN DINING	Displays MEXICAN RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW PIZZA	Displays PIZZERIA icons.
SHOW SEAFOOD DINING	Displays SEAFOOD RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW SPANISH DINING	Displays SPANISH RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW STEAK HOUSES	Displays STEAK HOUSE icons.
SHOW THAI DINING	Displays THAI RESTAURANT icons.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW VIETNAMESE DINING	Displays VIETNAMESE RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW OTHER DINING	Displays OTHER RESTAURANT icons.
SHOW GROCERIES	Displays GROCERY STORE icons.
SHOW SHOPPING MALLS	Displays SHOPPING MALL icons.
SHOW CONVENIENCE STORES	Displays CONVENIENCE STORE icons.
SHOW HOME IMPROVEMENT	Displays HOME IMPROVEMENT icons.
SHOW OFFICE AND ELECTRONICS	Displays OFFICE & ELECTRONICS icons.
SHOW RETAIL AND DEPARTMENT STORES	Displays RETAIL & DEPARTMENT STORE icons.
SHOW DEPARTMENT STORES	Displays DEPARTMENT STORE icons.
SHOW BOOK STORES	Displays BOOK STORE icons.
SHOW CLOTHING AND SHOE STORES	Displays CLOTHING & SHOES STORE icons.
SHOW HOBBY AND CRAFTS	Displays HOBBY & CRAFT icons.
SHOW JEWELRY	Displays JEWELRY icons.
SHOW SPORTING EQUIPMENT	Displays SPORTING EQUIPMENT icons.
SHOW RECREATIONAL VEHICLES	Displays RECREATIONAL VEHICLE icons.
SHOW OTHER RETAIL STORES	Displays OTHER RETAIL STORE icons.
SHOW POLICE STATIONS	Displays POLICE STATION icons.
SHOW FIRE STATIONS	Displays FIRE STATION icons.
SHOW HOSPITALS	Displays HOSPITAL icons.
SHOW PHARMACIES	Displays PHARMACY icons.
SHOW OTHER MEDICAL FACILITIES	Displays OTHER MEDICAL FACILITY icons.
SHOW HOTELS	Displays HOTEL icons.
SHOW REST AREAS	Displays REST AREA icons.
SHOW AIRPORTS	Displays AIRPORT icons.
SHOW BUS STATIONS	Displays BUS STATION icons.

## **NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS**

---

Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW TRAIN STATIONS	Displays TRAIN STATION icons.
SHOW PORTS AND FERRIES	Displays PORT & FERRY icons.
SHOW TAXIS AND SHUTTLES	Displays TAXI & SHUTTLE icons.
SHOW FULL SERVICE BANKS	Displays FULL-SERVICE BANKS icons.
SHOW ATMS	Displays ATM icons.
SHOW ATTRACTIONS	Displays ATTRACTIONS icons.
SHOW ENTERTAINMENT	Displays ENTERTAINMENT icons.
SHOW TOURIST INFORMATION	Displays TOURIST INFORMATION icons.
SHOW PARKS AND BEACHES	Displays PARK & BEACH icons.
SHOW SPORTS AND FITNESS	Displays SPORTS & FITNESS icons.
SHOW BOWLING CENTERS	Displays BOWLING icons.
SHOW GOLF COURSES	Displays GOLF COURSE icons.
SHOW HORSE RACING	Displays HORSE RACING icons.
SHOW HEALTH AND FITNESS CLUBS	Displays HEALTH & FITNESS CLUB icons.
SHOW MARINAS	Displays MARINA icons.
SHOW MOTOR SPORTS	Displays MOTOR SPORTS icons.
SHOW SKI RESORTS	Displays SKI RESORT icons.
SHOW SPORTS COMPLEXES	Displays SPORTS COMPLEX icons.
SHOW NIGHTLIFE	Displays NIGHTLIFE icons.
SHOW PERFORMING ARTS	Displays PERFORMING ART icons.
SHOW CITY CENTERS	Displays CITY CENTER icons.
SHOW GOVERNMENT	Displays GOVERNMENT icons.
SHOW SCHOOLS	Displays SCHOOL icons.
SHOW DRY CLEANERS	Displays DRY CLEANING icons.
SHOW FLORISTS	Displays FLORIST icons.
SHOW LIBRARIES	Displays LIBRARY icons.
SHOW PERSONAL GROOMING	Displays PERSONAL GROOMING icons.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

Show POI icons	
Command	Action
SHOW SHIPPING AND COPIES	Displays SHIPPING & COPY icons.
SHOW POST OFFICES	Displays POST OFFICE icons.
SHOW OTHER SERVICES	Displays OTHER SERVICE icons.
Delete POI icons	
Command	Action
Clear all icons	Deletes all POI icons.
Select audio mode	
Command	Action
Radio	Selects audio mode to radio.
AM	Selects audio mode to AM.
FM	Selects audio mode to FM.
FM1	Selects audio mode to FM1.
FM2	Selects audio mode to FM2.
Satellite radio	Selects audio mode to satellite radio.
Satellite radio 1	Selects audio mode to satellite radio 1.
Satellite radio 2	Selects audio mode to satellite radio 2.
Satellite radio 3	Selects audio mode to satellite radio 3.
CD	Selects audio mode to CD.
DVD	Selects audio mode to DVD.
CD changer	Selects audio mode to CD changer.
DVD changer	Selects audio mode to DVD changer.
Auxiliary	Selects audio mode to auxiliary.
Bluetooth audio	Selects audio mode to Bluetooth® audio.
iPod	Selects audio mode to iPod.
USB audio	Selects audio mode to USB audio.
Audio On/Off	
Command	Action
Audio on / Audio off	Turns audio system on and off.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS

---

Radio operation	
Command	Action
Seek up	Seeks up for a radio station.
Seek down	Seeks down for a radio station.
Type up	Seeks up for program type.
Type down	Seeks down for program type.
Disc operation	
Command	Action
Track up	Tracks up for a track number.
Track down	Tracks down for a track number.
Previous track	Selects previous track.
Disc up	Disc up.
Disc down	Disc down.
Climate command	
Command	Action
Automatic climate control	Turns air conditioner on and off.
Raise temperature	Turns temperature up.
Lower temperature	Turns temperature down.
?? degrees (?? is 65 to 85)	Selects temperature from 65 to 80 degrees.
Phone	
Command	Action
Dial by number	Calls by phone number.
Dial by name	Calls by giving a voice tag in the phonebook.
Select phone	Selects phone.

INFORMATION
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <i>The function that cannot be used according to the vehicle is provided.</i></li><li>● <i>Voice recognition language can be changed. (See “● Selecting a language” on page 331.)</i></li></ul>

**NAVIGATION SYSTEM: BASIC FUNCTIONS**

---

## **SECTION 2**

### **NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH**

● Destination search .....	62
Selecting the search area .....	62
Destination search by Home .....	64
Destination search by Preset destinations .....	64
Destination search by “Address” .....	65
Destination search by “Point of Interest” .....	69
Destination search by “Destination Assist” .....	76
Destination search by “Previous Destinations” .....	76
Destination search by “Address Book” .....	77
Destination search by “Emergency” .....	77
Destination search by “Intersection & Freeway” .....	78
Destination search by “Map” .....	81
Destination search by “Coordinates” .....	82
Deleting set destinations .....	82
● Starting route guidance .....	83

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

### Destination search —



Push the “DEST” button.



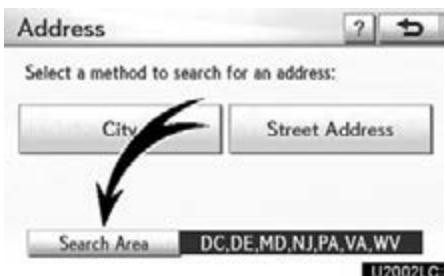
You can use one of 11 different methods to search your destination. (See pages 64 through 82.)

#### INFORMATION

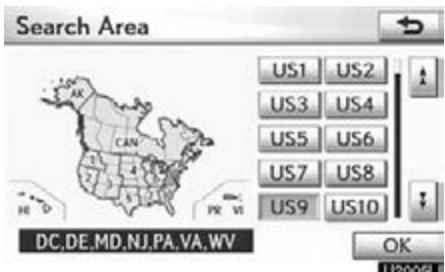
*When searching the destination, the response to the screen button may be slow.*

### — Selecting the search area

Change the selected region in order to set a destination from a different region by using “Address”, “Point of Interest” or “Intersection & Freeway”.



1. Touch “Search Area” to display a map of the United States and Canada divided into 15 regions. (For map database information and updates, see “Map database information and updates” on page 408.)



2. Touch one of “US1” through “CAN” to select a region to search.
3. Touch “OK” and the previous screen returns.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

---

U.S.A.	
Button	States included in the search region
“US1”	Idaho Oregon Washington
“US2”	California Nevada
“US3”	Arizona Colorado Montana New Mexico Utah Wyoming
“US4”	Iowa Kansas Minnesota Missouri North Dakota Nebraska South Dakota
“US5”	Oklahoma Texas
“US6”	Illinois Indiana Kentucky Michigan Ohio Wisconsin
“US7”	Arkansas Alabama Louisiana Mississippi Tennessee
“US8”	Connecticut Massachusetts Maine New Hampshire New Jersey New York Rhode Island Vermont

“US9”	Washington, D.C. Delaware Maryland New Jersey Pennsylvania Virginia West Virginia
“US10”	Florida Georgia North Carolina South Carolina
“HI”	Hawaii
“AK”	Alaska
“PR”	Puerto Rico
“VI”	US Virgin Islands
Canada	
Button	Provinces and regions included in the search region
“CAN”	All provinces and regions in Canada included in this button.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

### — Destination search by Home

1. Push the “DEST” button.



2. Touch “Go Home”.

The screen changes and displays the map location for home and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

If home has not been registered, a message will be displayed and the setting screen will automatically appear.

To use this function, it is necessary to set a “Home” address. (To register “Home”, see page 111.)

#### INFORMATION

**Guidance starts from the current vehicle position to your home if “OK” is touched even while driving.**

### — Destination search by Preset destinations

1. Push the “DEST” button.



2. Touch any of the preset destination buttons on the “Destination” screen.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the preset destination point and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

If a preset destination point has not been registered, a message will be displayed and the setting screen will automatically appear.

To use this function, it is necessary to set “Preset Destinations”. (To register “Preset Destinations”, see page 113.)

#### INFORMATION

**Guidance starts from the current vehicle position to the preset destination point if “Go to ⊙” is touched even while driving.**

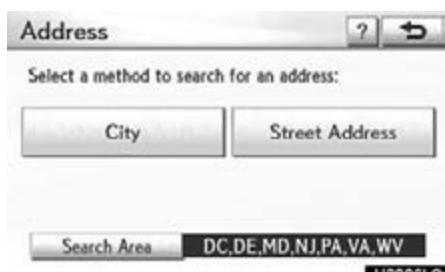
## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

### — Destination search by “Address”

There are 2 ways to search a destination by address.

- (a) Search by city
- (b) Search by street address

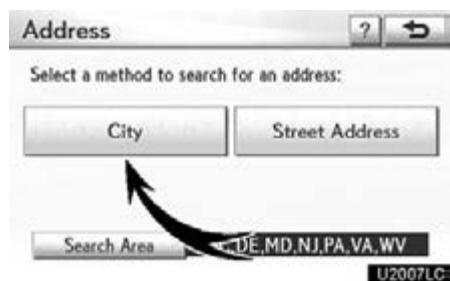
1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Address” on the “Destination” screen.



3. Touch the button for the desired method.

#### (a) Selecting a city to search

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Address” on the “Destination” screen.



3. Touch “City”.



4. Input a city name.



5. Touch the button of the desired city name from the displayed list.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

**Street Name**

Enter a street name \*\*\*

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	.
Q	W	E	R	T	Y	U	I	O	P	
A	S	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	&	
Z	X	C	V	B	N	M				

A-Z Other Space OK U2010LC

**House Number**

Enter a house number

N	1	2	3
W	4	5	6
S	7	8	9
E	0	/	

A-Z 0-9 Space OK U2012LC

6. Input the street name and touch "OK".

**Street Name**

CON 5 Matches

CONDON

CONGRESS

CONIFER

CONNECTICUT

CONSTITUTION

U2011LC

7. When the desired street name is found, touch the corresponding button.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 83.)

8. Input a house number.

**Address**

3 Matches

CONSTITUTION AVE NE, WASHINGT...

CONSTITUTION AVE NW, WASHINGT...

CONSTITUTION CT NW, WASHINGT...

U2013LC

If the same address exists in more than one city, the current screen changes to the address list screen.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

---

### SELECTING FROM THE LAST 5 CITIES



1. Touch "Last 5 Cities".



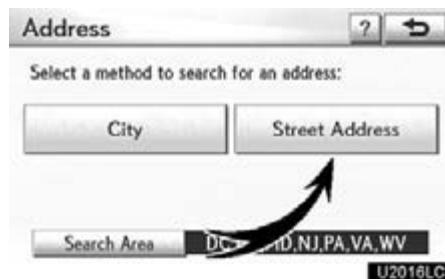
2. Touch the button of the desired city name.

If the navigation system has never been used, this function will not be available.

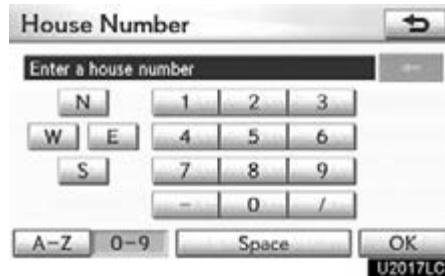
The current screen changes to the screen for inputting a street name. (See "(a) Selecting a city to search" on page 65.)

### (b) Search by street address

1. Push the "DEST" button.
2. Touch "Address" on the "Destination" screen.



3. Touch "Street Address".



4. Touch numbers directly on the screen to input a house number.

After inputting a house number, touch "OK" to display the screen for inputting a street name.



5. Input the street name and touch "OK".

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

Street Name

CONN	100 Matches
CONN	
CONNANT	
CONNARD	
CONNATSER	
CONNAUGHT	

U2019LC

City Name

B	5 Matches
BALTIMORE, MD	
BEACH HAVEN, NJ	
BROWNS MILLS, NJ	
BURLINGTON, NJ	
BURLINGTON TWP, NJ	

U2021LC

6. When the desired street name is found, touch the corresponding button.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 83.)

If the same address exists in more than one city, the current screen changes inputting the city name or to the address list screen.

8. Touch the button of the desired city name from the displayed list.

### INFORMATION

*You can search for a street name using just the body.*

*Example : S WESTERN AVE*

*You can input "S WESTERN AVE", "WESTERN AVE" or "WESTERN"*

City Name

Enter a city name	74 Matches
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0	...
Q W E R T Y U O P	
A S D F G H J K L	
Z X C V B N M	
A-Z Other Space	OK

U2020LC

7. Input a city name.

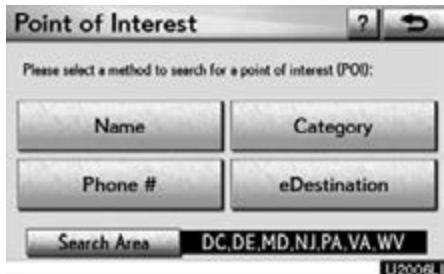
## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

### — Destination search by “Point of Interest”

There are 4 ways to search by Points of Interest.

- (a) Search by name
- (b) Search by category
- (c) Search by phone #
- (d) Search by eDestination

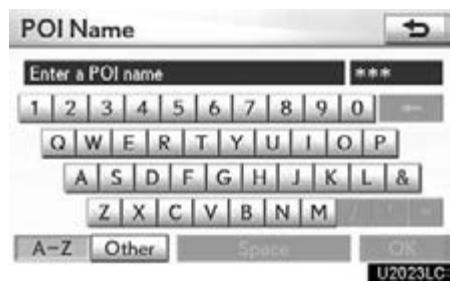
1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Points of Interest” on the “Destination” screen.



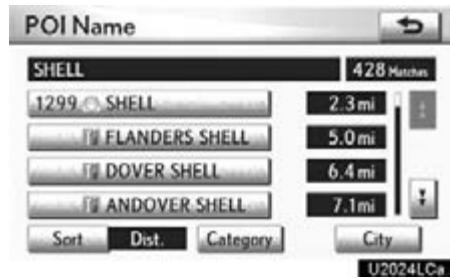
3. Touch the button for the desired method.

#### (a) Search by “Name”

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Point of Interest” on the “Destination” screen.
3. Touch “Name” on the “Point of Interest” screen.



4. Input the name of the Point of Interest.



5. Touch the button of the desired destination.

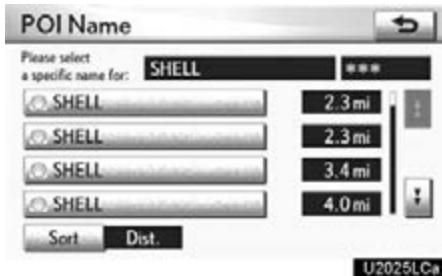
The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

When inputting the name of a specific Point of Interest, and there are two or more sites with the same name, the list screen is displayed.

#### INFORMATION

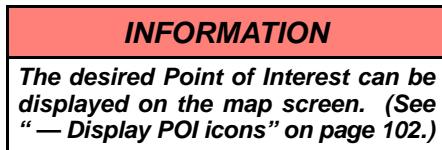
*To search for a facility name using multiple search words, put a space between each word.*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

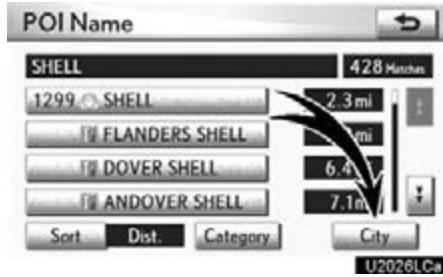


**Touch the button of the desired destination.**

If the same name exists in more than one city, a search can be performed more easily with "City" and "Category". (See "● Selecting a city to search" on page 70 and "● Selecting from the categories" on page 71.)



### ● Selecting a city to search



#### 1. Touch "City".



#### 2. Input the city name.



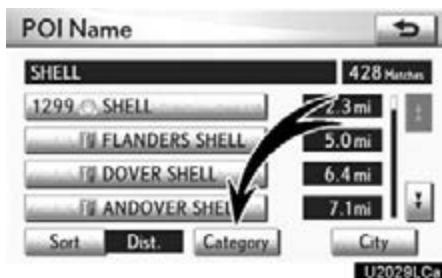
#### 3. Touch the button of the desired city name from the displayed list.



## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

---

- Selecting from the categories



Touch “Category”.



If the desired POI category is on the screen, touch the name to display a detailed list of the POI category.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, touch “List All Categories” to list all POI categories.



When the desired category is touched, the POI name list screen is displayed.

- (b) Search by “Category”

The destination can be set by touching the search point and the POI category.

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Point of Interest” on the “Destination” screen.
3. Touch “Category” on the “Point of Interest” screen.



Set the search point by the following method:

1. Set the search point from near the vehicle's current position
2. Set the search point from along the chosen route
3. Set the search point from near a city center
4. Set the search point from near a destination

It is possible to display the names of POIs located within approximately 200 miles (320 km) from the selected search point.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

## **SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM NEAR HERE**

**Touch “Near Here”.**

The search point is set at the current position, and the “POI Category” screen will be displayed. (See page 74.)

## **SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM ALONG MY ROUTE**

**Touch “Along My Route”.**

The search point is set and the “POI Category” screen will be displayed. (See page 74.)

## **SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM NEAR CITY CENTER**

- ### **1. Touch “Near City Center”.**



- ## **2. Input the city center name.**



- 3. Touch the button of the desired city center name.**

The search point is set and the “POI Category” screen will be displayed. (See page 74.)

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

### SELECTING FROM THE LAST 5 CITIES

1. Touch "Near City Center".



2. Touch "Last 5 Cities".

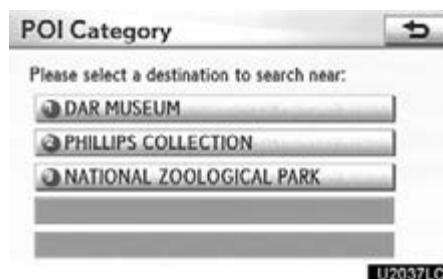


3. Touch the button of the desired city center name.

The search point is set and the "POI Category" screen will be displayed. (See page 74.)

### SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM NEAR A DESTINATION

1. Touch "Near a Destination".



2. Touch the button of the desired destination.

The search point is set and the "POI Category" screen will be displayed. (See page 74.)

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

- To search POIs near the search point

When the search point is set, the "POI Category" screen will be displayed.



Touch the desired POI category.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, touch "List All Categories" to list all POI categories.



Touch the desired POI category from the list.



By touching the button of the desired item, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 83.)

- Search by "Phone #"

- Push the "DEST" button.
- Touch "Point of Interest" on the "Destination" screen.
- Touch "Phone #" on the "Point of Interest" screen.



- Input a telephone number.
- After inputting a telephone number, touch "OK".

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 83.)

If there is more than one site with the same number, the following screen will be displayed.

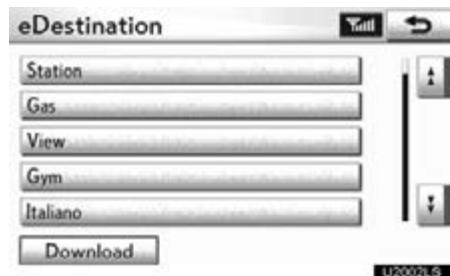


## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

INFORMATION
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <i>If there is no match for the telephone number inputted, a list of identical numbers with different area codes will be displayed.</i></li><li>● <i>To set an address book entry as a destination using the phone number, the number must already be registered. (See page 121.)</i></li></ul>

### (d) Search by “eDestination”

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Point of Interest” on the “Destination” screen.
3. Touch “eDestination” on the “Point of Interest” screen.



With the eDestination feature, you can go online, via the Lexus.com owner's Web site, to select and organize destinations of your choice and then wirelessly send them to your vehicle's navigation system. You can store up to 200 locations online to access and update at any time. Your locations can be organized into up to 20 folders. (See “eDestination” on page 160.)

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

### — Destination search by “Destination Assist”

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Destination Assist” on the “Destination” screen.
3. Touch “Call Dest. Assist” on the “Destination Assist” screen.



Destination Assist provides you with live assistance for finding destinations via the Lexus Enform response center. You can request either a specific business, address, or ask for help locating your desired destination by category, such as restaurants, gas stations, shopping centers or other points of interest (POI). After you tell the agent your choice of destination, its coordinates are sent wirelessly to your vehicle's navigation system. (See “Destination Assist” on page 157.)

### — Destination search by “Previous Destinations”

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Previous Destinations” on the “Destination” screen.



The previous starting point and up to 100 previously set destinations are displayed on the screen.

3. Touch the button of the desired destination.

“Delete”: To delete the previous destination. (To delete previous destinations, see page 127.)

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

#### INFORMATION

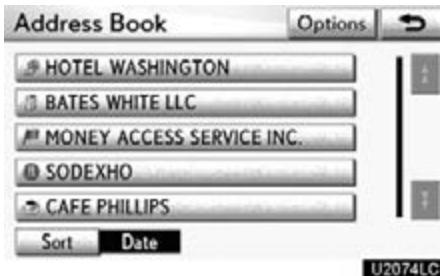
*The list of previous destinations can also be deleted by touching “Delete Previous Dest.” on the “Navigation Settings” screen when the vehicle is stopped. (See “— Deleting previous destinations” on page 127.)*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

### — Destination search by “Address Book”

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Address Book” on the “Destination” screen.

A list of registered address book entries is displayed.



3. Touch the button of the desired address book entry.

“Options”: To register or edit address book. (See page 116.)

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

### — Destination search by “Emergency”

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Emergency” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.

The display changes to a screen to select police stations, dealers, hospitals or fire stations. While driving, only nearby police stations, dealers, hospitals, or fire stations are shown. The current position is shown with an address, and the latitude and the longitude at the top of the screen.



3. Touch the desired emergency category.

The selected emergency category list is displayed.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

### — Destination search by “Intersection & Freeway”



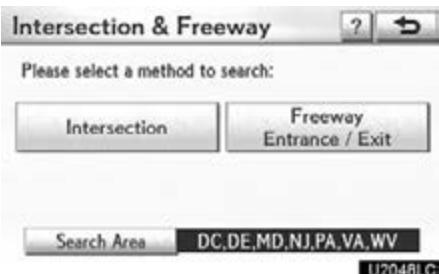
4. Touch the button of the desired destination.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

There are 2 ways to search.

- (a) Search by intersection  
(b) Search by Freeway Entrance/Exit

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Intersection & Freeway” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.



3. Touch the button for the desired method.

#### INFORMATION

*The navigation system does not guide in areas where route guidance is unavailable. (See page 407.)*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

---

**(a) Search by "Intersection"**

1. Push the "DEST" button.
2. Touch "Intersection & Freeway" on the second page of the "Destination" screen.
3. Touch "Intersection" on the "Intersection & Freeway" screen.



4. Input the name of the first intersecting street which are located near the destination to be set.

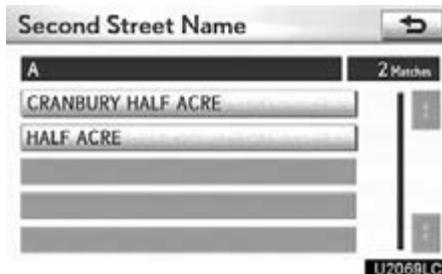
5. Touch "OK".



6. Touch the button of the desired item.



7. Input the name of the second intersecting street.

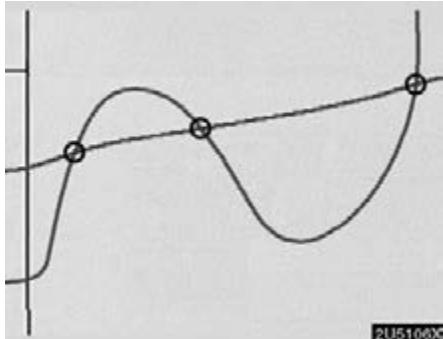


8. Touch the button of the desired item.

After inputting the two intersecting streets, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 83.)

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

---



If the same two streets cross at more than one intersection, the screen changes and displays the menu to select the city name where the streets intersect. Select the city, and the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 83.)

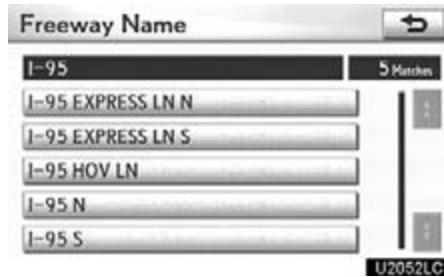
**(b) Search by "Freeway Entrance/Exit"**

1. Push the "DEST" button.
2. Touch "Intersection & Freeway" on the second page of the "Destination" screen.
3. Touch "Freeway Entrance/Exit" on the "Intersection & Freeway" screen.



**4. To input a freeway name.**

Be sure to use the complete name of the freeway or highway, including the hyphen, when entering the destination. Freeways and interstates use an "I" (I-405). US highways use the state designation before the number (CA-118).



**5. Select the desired freeway by touching the button.**

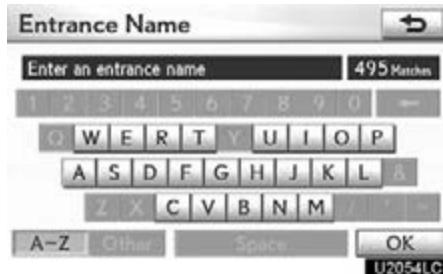
## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

---

### — Destination search by “Map”

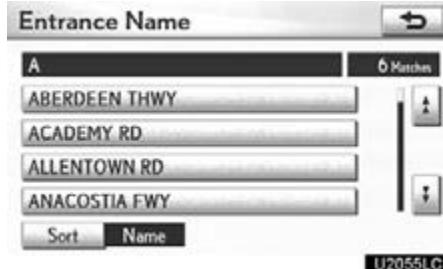


6. Either a freeway “Entrance” or “Exit” can be selected.



7. Input a freeway entrance or exit name.

8. Touch “OK”.



9. Touch the button of the desired entrance or exit name.

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)



The screen changes and displays the map location that was previously displayed just before the destination input operation and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

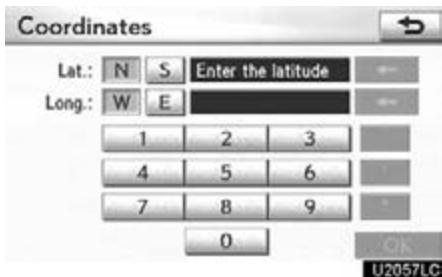
### INFORMATION

**Guidance starts if “OK” is touched even while driving. However, the cursor cannot be moved.**

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

### — Destination search by “Coordinates”

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Coordinates” on the second page of the “Destination” screen.



3. Input the latitude and the longitude.
4. When the input is finished, touch “OK”.

By touching the button of the desired point, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

### — Deleting set destinations

A set destination can be deleted.

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Del. Dest.” on the “Destination” screen.

When more than one destination is set, a list will be displayed on the screen.



3. Touch the destination for deletion.

“Select All”: To select all destinations on the list.

“Unselect All”: To unselect all of the selected destinations.

4. Touch “Delete”.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

---



A message appears to confirm the request to delete.

**5. To delete the destination(s), touch "Yes".**

If "Yes" is touched, the data cannot be recovered.

If "No" is touched, the previous screen will return.

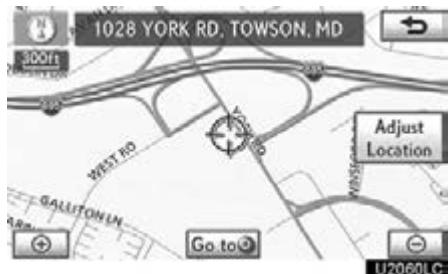
The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route.

### INFORMATION

***Set destinations can also be deleted by touching "Route". (See "— Deleting destinations" on page 95.)***

## Starting route guidance

After inputting the destination, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference.



**1. Scroll the map to the desired point.**

"**Adjust Location**": To adjust the position in smaller increments.



**When an arrow facing the desired point is touched, the map scrolls in that direction.**

The scroll stops when the selection of the arrow is released.

**2. Touch "Go to ⓧ".**

The system starts route search and displays recommended routes.

If there is already a set destination, "**Go to ⓧ**" and "**Add to Route**" are displayed.

"**Go to ⓧ**": To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

"**Add to Route**": To add a destination.

"**Info.**": If this button is displayed on the top of the screen, touch it to view items such as name, address, and phone number.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH



- [1]** Current position
- [2]** Destination point
- [3]** Type of the route and the distance
- [4]** Distance of the entire route

3. To start guidance, touch "OK".

"Turn List": The following screen displays the list of the roads up to the destination.

"3 Routes": To select the desired route from 3 possible routes. (See page 85.)

"Edit Route": To change the route. (See page 86.)

### INFORMATION

- Guidance can be paused or resumed. (See “— Pausing and resuming guidance” on page 101.)
- If “OK” is touched until a beep sounds, demo mode will start. Push the “MAP/VOICE” button to finish Demo mode.
- The route for returning may not be the same as that for going.
- The route guidance to the destination may not be the shortest route nor a route without traffic congestion.
- Route guidance may not be available if there is no road data for the specified location.
- When setting the destination on a map with a scale larger than 0.5 miles (800 m), the map scale changes to 0.5 miles (800 m) automatically. Set the destination again.
- If a destination is entered, the road nearest to the point you selected is set as the destination.

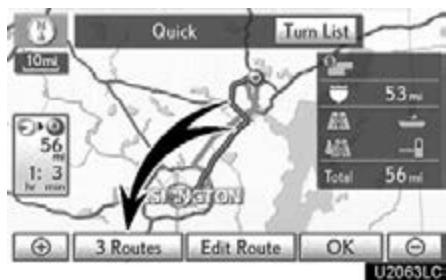
### ! CAUTION

Be sure to obey traffic regulations and keep road conditions in mind while driving. If a traffic sign on the road has been changed, the route guidance may not indicate such changed information.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

---

### 3 ROUTES SELECTION

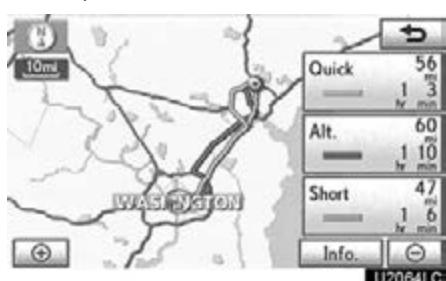


1. To select the desired route from 3 routes, touch "3 Routes".

3 Routes Info.			
	Quick	Alt.	Short
1	1 hr 3 min	1 hr 10 min	1 hr 6 min
2	56 miles	60 miles	47 miles
3	53 miles	53 miles	32 miles
4			
5			

U2065LC

- 1 Time necessary for the entire trip
- 2 Distance of the entire trip
- 3 Toll road
- 4 Freeway
- 5 Ferry



2. Touch "Quick", "Alt." or "Short" to select the desired route.

"**Quick**": Recommended route.  
This route is indicated by an orange line.

"**Alt.**": Alternative route.  
This route is indicated by a purple line.

"**Short**": A route by which you can reach the destination in the shortest distance.  
This route is indicated by a green line.

"**Info.**": To display the following information about each of the 3 routes.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: DESTINATION SEARCH

- **Edit route**

You can again designate the conditions of the route to the destination.



### INFORMATION

- Even if the “Freeways” indicator is dimmed, the route cannot avoid including a freeway in some cases.
- If the calculated route includes a trip by ferry, the route guidance shows a sea route. After you travel by ferry, the current vehicle position may be incorrect. Upon reception of GPS signals, it is automatically corrected.

Touch “Edit Route”.



**“Add”:** To add destinations. (See page 94.)

**“Delete”:** To delete destinations. (See page 95.)

**“Reorder”:** To reorder destinations. (See page 94.)

**“Preferences”:** A number of choices are provided on the conditions which the system uses to determine the route to the destination. (See page 99.)

## SECTION 3

### NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

● Route guidance screen .....	88
● Typical voice guidance prompts .....	91
● Distance and time to destination .....	93
● Setting and deleting destinations .....	94
Adding destinations .....	94
Reordering destinations .....	94
Deleting destinations .....	95
● Setting route .....	96
Detour setting .....	96
Route overview .....	97
Route preference .....	99
Pausing and resuming guidance .....	101
● Show on map .....	102
Display POI* icons .....	102
Route trace .....	106

\*: Point of Interest

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### Route guidance screen

During route guidance, various types of guidance screens can be displayed depending on conditions.

#### Screen layout



- 1** Distance to the next turn and the arrow indicating turning direction
- 2** Current street name
- 3** Distance and travel/arrival time to the destination
- 4** Current position
- 5** Guidance route

#### During freeway driving

During freeway driving, the freeway exit information screen will be displayed.

This screen displays the distance to the next junction and exit, or POIs in the vicinity of the freeway exit.



- 1** Current position
- 2** Points of Interest that are close to a freeway exit
- 3** Exit number and junction name
- 4** Distance from the current position to the exit or junction
- 5** Current street name

**"Map":** To display the selected map of the exit vicinity.

- : To scroll for farther junctions or exits.
- : To scroll for closer junctions or exits.
- : To scroll for the closest 3 junctions or exits.

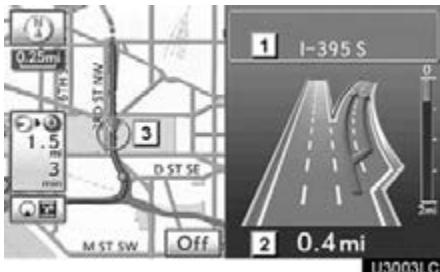
### INFORMATION

- If the vehicle goes off the guidance route, the route is searched again.
- For some areas, the roads have not been completely digitized in our database. For this reason, the route guidance may select road that should not be traveled on.
- When you arrive at your destination, the destination name will be displayed on the top of the screen. Touching "Off" clears the display.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

- When approaching a freeway exit or junction

When the vehicle approaches an exit or junction, the guidance screen for the freeway will be displayed.



[1] Next street name

[2] Distance from the current position to the exit or junction

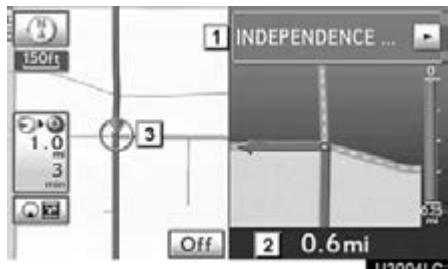
[3] Current position

“Off”: The guidance screen on freeway disappears and the map screen appears.

When touching [Intersection] or pushing the “MAP/VOICE” button, the guidance screen on freeway reappears.

- When approaching an intersection

When the vehicle approaches an intersection, the intersection guidance screen will be displayed.



[1] Next street name

[2] Distance to the intersection

[3] Current position

“Off”: The intersection guidance screen disappears and the map screen appears.

When touching [Intersection] or pushing the “MAP/VOICE” button, the intersection guidance screen reappears.

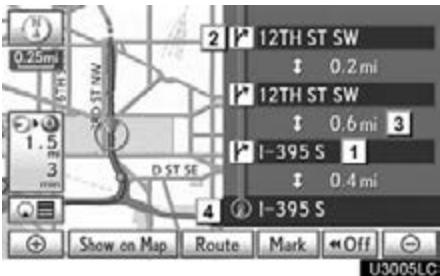
## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

- Other screens

### TURN LIST SCREEN

On this screen, the list of turns on the guidance route can be viewed.

Touching  during guidance displays the turn list.

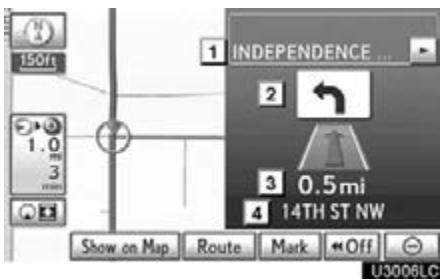


- [1] Next street name or destination name
- [2] Turn direction
- [3] Distance between turns
- [4] Current street name

### ARROW SCREEN

On this screen, information about next turns on the guidance route can be viewed.

Touching  during guidance displays the arrow screen.

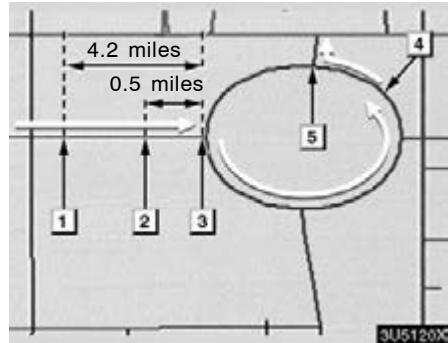
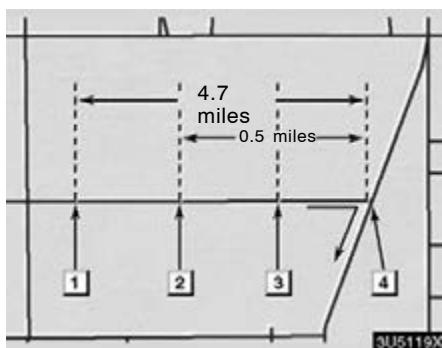


- [1] Exit number, street name containing number or next street name
- [2] Turn direction
- [3] Distance to the next turn
- [4] Current street name

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### Typical voice guidance prompts

The voice guidance provides various messages as you approach an intersection, or other point where you need to maneuver the vehicle.

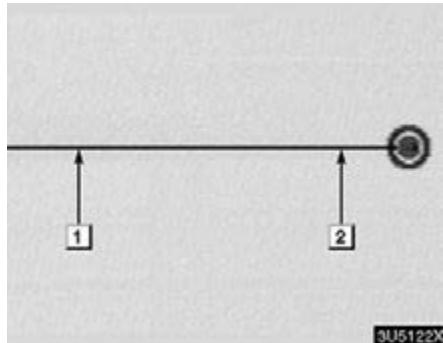
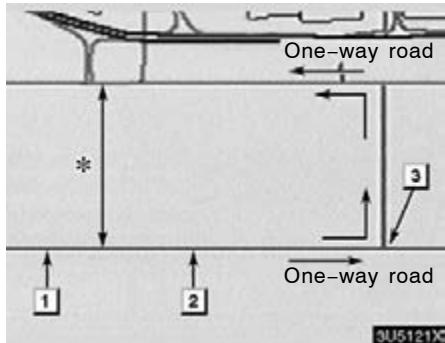


- [1] ♪ "Proceed about 5 miles to Main street."
- [2] ♪ "In half of a mile, right turn onto Main street."
- [3] ♪ "Right turn."
- [4] ♪ (Beep sound only)
- [5] ♪ "Proceed about 4 miles to the traffic circle."
- [2] ♪ "In half of a mile, traffic circle ahead, and then 3rd exit ahead onto Main street."
- [3] ♪ "The 3rd exit ahead."
- [4] ♪ "The exit ahead."
- [5] ♪ (Beep sound only)

#### INFORMATION

- *The street names may not be pronounced correctly or clearly due to text-to-speech function.*
- *On freeways, interstates or other highways with higher speed limits, the voice guidance will be made at earlier points than on city streets in order to allow time to maneuver.*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE



\*: The system indicates a U-turn if the distance between two one-way roads (of opposite directions) is less than 50 feet (15 m) in residential areas or 164 feet (50 m) in non-residential areas.

- [1] ♪ “In half of a mile, make a legal U-turn.”
- [2] ♪ “Make a legal U-turn ahead.”
- [3] ♪ (Beep sound only)

The system announces the approach to the final destination.

- [1] ♪ “Your destination is ahead.”
- [2] ♪ “You have arrived at your destination. The route guidance is now finished.”

### INFORMATION

- If the system cannot determine the current vehicle position correctly (in cases of poor GPS signal reception), the voice guidance may be made early or delayed.
- If you did not hear the voice guidance command, push the “MAP/VOICE” button to hear it again.
- To adjust the voice guidance volume, see “● Voice volume” on page 338.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### Distance and time to destination



When the vehicle is on the guidance route, the distance and the estimated travel/arrival time to the destination are displayed. When the vehicle is not on the guidance route, the distance and the direction of the destination are displayed.

When driving on the guidance route and more than one destination is set, the distance and the estimated travel/arrival time from the current position to each destination are displayed.

1. Touch this button to display the following screen.



2. Touch the number button to display the desired destination.

The distance, the estimated travel time and the estimated arrival time from the current position to the selected destination are displayed.



Estimated travel time is displayed.



Estimated arrival time is displayed.



To switch to estimated arrival time.



To switch to estimated travel time.



Displayed while driving off the guidance route. The destination direction is indicated by an arrow.

#### INFORMATION

**When the vehicle is on the guidance route, the distance measured along the route is displayed. Travel time and arrival time is calculated based on the set vehicle speed information. (See page 342.) However, when the vehicle is not on the guidance route, the distance is the linear distance between the current position and the destination.**

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### Setting and deleting destinations —

#### — Adding destinations

You can add destinations and search again for the routes.



1. Touch "Route".



2. Touch "Add".

3. Input an additional destination in the same way as the destination search. (See "Destination search" on page 62.)



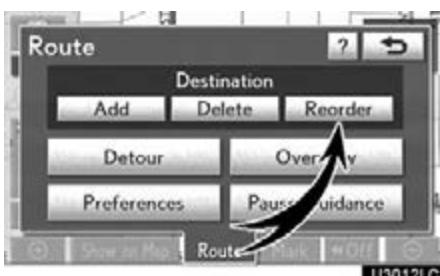
4. Touch the desired "Add Destination Here" to determine the arrival order of the additional destination.

#### — Reordering destinations

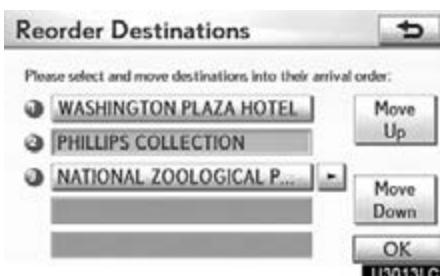
When more than one destination is set, you can change the arrival order of the destinations.



1. Touch "Route".



2. Touch "Reorder".



3. Touch the desired destination and touch "Move Up" or "Move Down" to change the arrival order.

4. Touch "OK".

5. After selecting the destinations, touch "OK".

The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### — Deleting destinations

A set destination can be deleted.



4. To delete the destination(s), touch "Yes".

If "Yes" is touched, the data cannot be recovered.

If "No" is touched, the previous screen will return.

The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route.

1. Touch "Route".



2. Touch "Delete".

When more than one destination is set, a list will be displayed on the screen.



3. Touch the destination for deletion.

"Select All": To select all destinations on the list.

"Unselect All": To unselect all of the selected destinations.

A message appears to confirm the request to delete.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### Setting route — — Detour setting

While the route guidance is operating, you can change the route to detour around a section of the route where a delay is caused by road repairs, or an accident, etc.



1. Touch "Route".



2. Touch "Detour".



3. Touch the button below to select the desired detour distance.

**"1 mile (km)", "3 miles (km)" or "5 miles (km)":** Touch one of these buttons to start the detour process. After detouring, the system returns to the original guidance route.

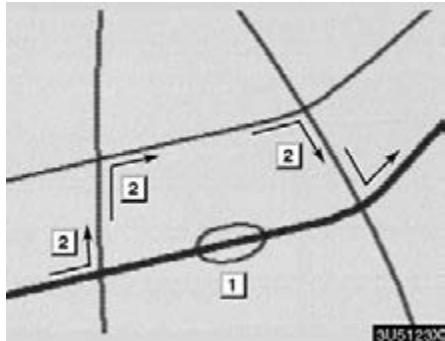
**"Whole Route":** By touching this button, the system will calculate an entire new route to the destination.

**"Around Traffic":** If you touch this button, the system will search for the route based on the traffic congestion information received from XM® NavTraffic. For details, see "XM® NavTraffic" on page 173.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

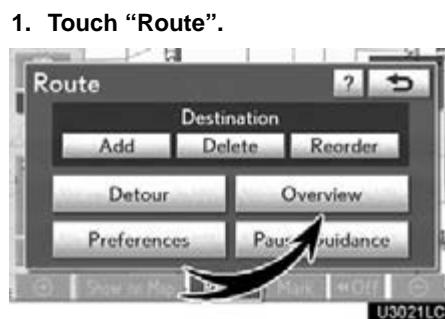
---

### — Route overview



This picture shows an example of how the system would guide around a delay caused by a traffic jam.

- [1]** This position indicates the location of a traffic jam caused by road repairs or an accident.
- [2]** This route indicates the detour suggested by the system.



### 2. Touch “Overview”.



The entire route from the current position to the destination is displayed.

**“OK”:** To start guidance.

**“Turn List”:** The following screen displays the list of the roads up to the destination.

**“Preview”:** To preview the route.

INFORMATION
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>When your vehicle is on a freeway, the detour distance selections are 5, 15, and 25 miles (km).</i></li> <li><i>The system may not be able to calculate a detour route depending on the selected distance and surrounding road conditions.</i></li> </ul>

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE



You can scroll through the list of roads by

touching or . However, not all road names in the route may appear on the list. If a road changes its name without requiring a turn (such as on a street that runs through two or more cities), the name change will not appear on the list. The street names will be displayed in order from the starting point, along with the distance to the next turn.

- These marks indicate the direction in which you should turn at an intersection.
- These marks indicate the direction in which you should turn at an intersection.

**Touch "Map" on the "Turn List" screen.**

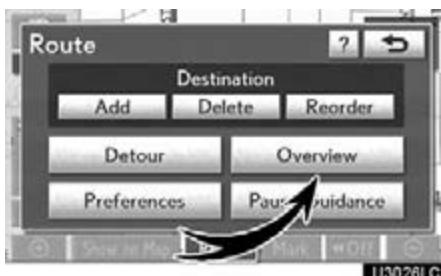
The point which you choose is displayed on the map screen.



### ● Route preview



#### 1. Touch "Route".



#### 2. Touch "Overview".



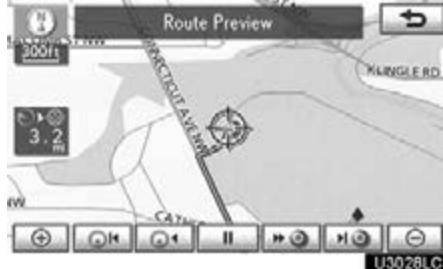
#### 3. Touch "Preview".

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### — Route preference

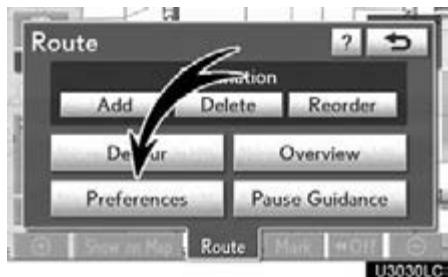
#### ● To select route type

You can designate the route conditions of the route to the destination.

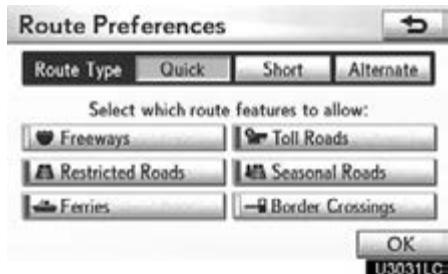


- [] : To indicate the next destination.
- [] : To preview the route to the next destination.
- [] : To preview the route to the next destination in fast-forward mode.
- [] : To stop the preview.
- [] : To review the route to the previous destination or starting point.
- [] : To review the route to the previous destination or starting point in fast-forward mode.
- [] : To indicate the previous destination or starting point.

#### 1. Touch “Route”.



#### 2. Touch “Preferences”.



#### 3. Touch “Quick”, “Short” or “Alternate” and touch “OK”.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE



The entire route from the starting point to the destination is displayed.

**"OK"**: To start guidance.

**"Edit Route"**: To change a route. (See page 86.)

- **To select route features**

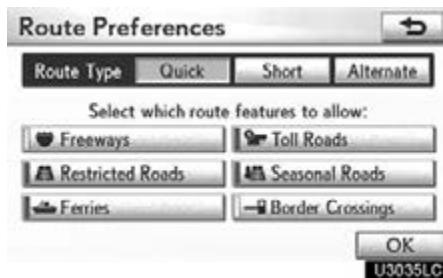
A number of choices are provided on the conditions which the system uses to determine the route to the destination.



1. Touch "Route".



2. Touch "Preferences" to change the conditions that determine the route to the destination.



3. Select the desired route preference by touching the button.

When searching for a route, the system will avoid routes when the indicator is off.

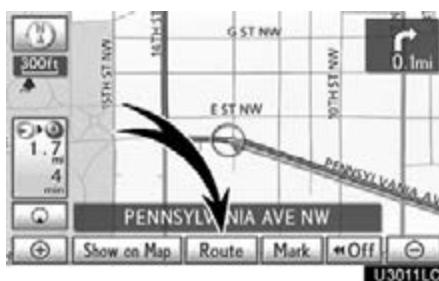
4. After choosing the desired route preference, touch "OK".

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

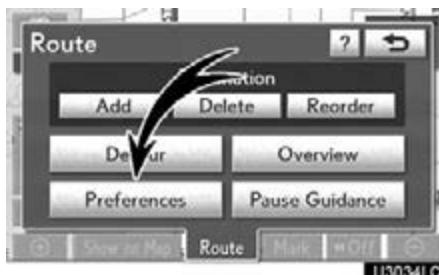
### — Pausing and resuming guidance

- Starting route from adjacent road

You can start the route guidance from the adjacent road.  
(ex. When route guidance is set on the freeway, but the vehicle is driven parallel along the freeway.)



1. Touch "Route".



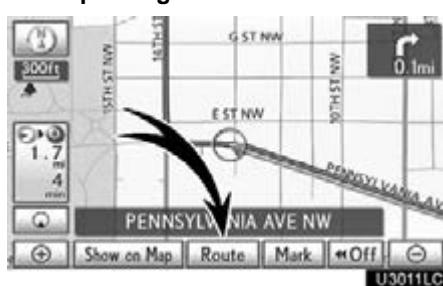
2. Touch "Preferences".



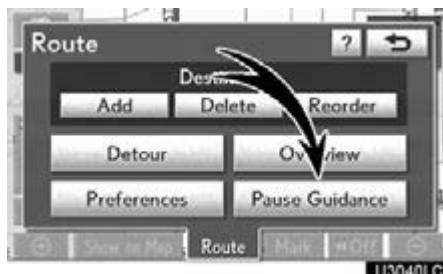
3. Touch "Start from Adjacent Road".

When there is no adjacent road, this button will not be displayed.

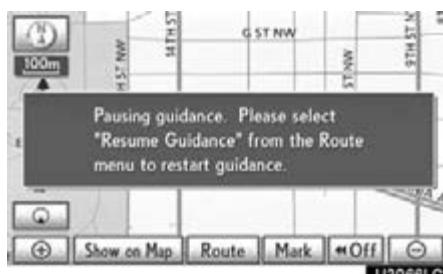
- To pause guidance



1. Touch "Route".



2. Touch "Pause Guidance".



The screen will return to the current position map without route guidance.

#### INFORMATION

*Without route guidance, "Pause Guidance" cannot be used.*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### Show on map — — Display POI icons

- To resume guidance



1. Touch "Route".



2. Touch "Resume Guidance".

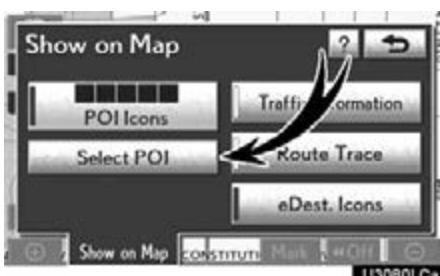


The screen will change to the current position map with route guidance.

Points of Interest such as gas stations and restaurants can be displayed on the map screen. You can also set their location as a destination and use them for route guidance.

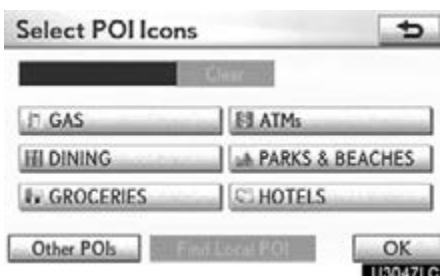


1. Touch "Show on Map".



2. Touch "Select POI" to display a particular type of Point of Interest on the screen.

When the Points of Interest to be displayed on the map screen have already been set, "Change POI" is displayed.

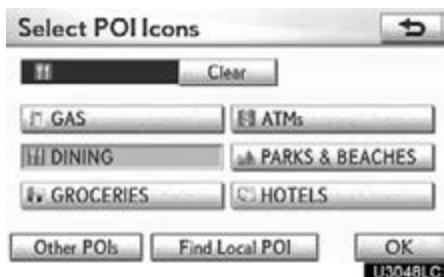


A screen with a limited choice of Points of Interest will be displayed. (To change the displayed POI, see page 345.)

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### ● Selecting POIs to be displayed

Up to 5 categories of icons can be displayed on the screen.



**Touch the desired Point of Interest category to display POI location symbols on the map screen.**

By touching the desired POI category and then touching "OK", the selected POI icons are displayed on the map screen.

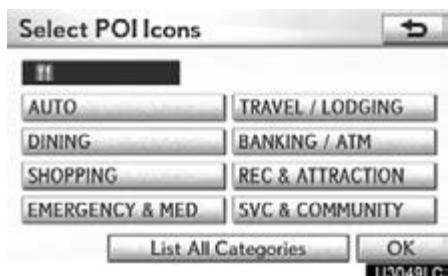
To turn off the Points of Interest icons on the map screen, touch "Clear".

**"Other POIs":** If the desired Point of Interest can not be found on the limited choice screen, touch this button.

**"Find Local POI":** When searching for the nearest Point of Interest, touch this button. Then choose one of the categories. The system will list the points within 200 miles (320 km). (See page 104.)

Touch "Other POIs" on the "Select POI Icons" screen.

When a Point of Interest category is selected from either the limited list or the complete list, the screen will display symbols of those locations on the map screen.



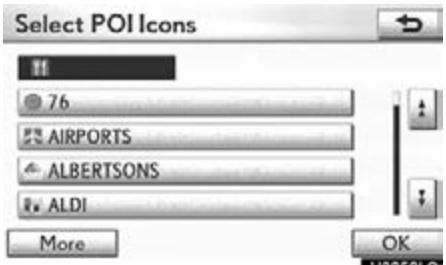
**Touch the desired POI categories.**

The selected category icon appears on the top left of the screen.

By touching the desired POI category and then touching "OK", the selected POI icons are touching on the map screen.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, touch "List All Categories" to list all POI categories.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE



**Touch the desired POI categories from the list.**

The selected category icon appears on the top left of the screen.

By touching the desired POI category and then touching “OK”, the selected POI icons are displayed on the map screen.

To return to the POI category selection screen, touch “More”.

- **To display the local POI list**

Points of Interest that are within 200 miles (320 km) of the current position will be listed from among the selected categories.



1. Touch “Find Local POI” on the “Select POI Icons” screen.



2. Touch the button of the desired Point of Interest.

The selected Points of Interest are displayed on the map screen.

“Near...”: To search for Points of Interest near the current position or along the route.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE



**"Near Here"** : When "**Near Here**" is touched, the list of Points of Interest near the current position will be displayed.

**"Along My Route"** : When "**Along My Route**" is touched, the list of Points of Interest along the route will be displayed.

- **To set a POI as a destination**

You can select one of the Points of Interest icons on the map screen as a destination and use it for route guidance.



1. **Directly touch the Point of Interest icon that you want to set as a destination.**

The map will shift so that the icon is centered on the screen and overlaps with the cursor . At this time, the distance from the current position is displayed on the screen. The distance shown is measured as a straight line from the current vehicle position to the POI.

2. **When the desired Point of Interest overlaps with the cursor, touch "Enter .**

The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and route preference. (See "Starting route guidance" on page 83.)

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

### — Route trace

- To hide POI icons

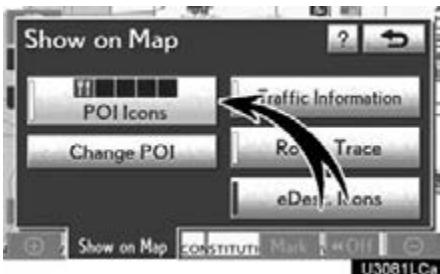


It is possible to store the traveled route up to 124 miles (200 km) and retrace the route on the display.

#### INFORMATION

*This feature is available on the map with more detailed map scale than 30 miles (50 km).*

1. Touch "Show on Map".



2. Touch "POI Icons".

The "POI Icons" indicator is dimmed.

The map screen will be displayed with the POI icons hidden.

To display the POI icons again, touch "POI Icons" on the "Show on Map" screen.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE

---

- To start recording the route trace



1. Touch "Show on Map".



2. Touch "Route Trace".  
"Route Trace" indicator is highlighted.

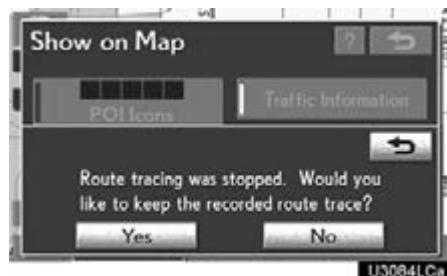
- To stop recording the route trace



1. Touch "Show on Map".



2. Touch "Route Trace". The following screen will be displayed.



Touching "Yes" stops recording and the route trace remains displayed on the screen.

Touching "No" stops recording and the route trace is erased.

**NAVIGATION SYSTEM: ROUTE GUIDANCE**

---

## **SECTION 4**

### **NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS**

- **Navigation settings** ..... 110
  - Setting up the “Home” ..... 111
  - Setting up the “Preset Destinations” ..... 113
  - Setting up the “Address Book” ..... 116
  - Setting up the “Areas to Avoid” ..... 122
  - Deleting previous destinations ..... 127

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

### Navigation settings —

Points or areas on the map can be registered.

The registered points can be used on the “Destination” screen. (See “— Destination search by Home” on page 64, “— Destination search by Preset destinations” on page 64 and “— Destination search by “Address Book”” on page 77.)

Registered areas are avoided at the time of route search.



**1. Push the “SETUP” button.**



**2. Touch “Navi.”.**



On this screen, the following operations can be performed.

No.	Function
<b>1</b>	<b>Sets home</b> (See page 111.)
<b>2</b>	<b>Sets preset destinations</b> (See page 113.)
<b>3</b>	<b>Sets address book</b> (See page 116.)
<b>4</b>	<b>Sets area to avoid</b> (See page 122.)
<b>5</b>	<b>Deletes previous destinations</b> (See page 127.)
<b>6</b>	<b>Detailed navigation settings</b> (See page 340.)

**— Setting up the “Home”**

If home has been registered, that information can be recalled by using “Go Home” on the “Destination” screen. (See “— Destination search by Home” on page 64.)

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Home”.



- Registering home (See page 111.)
- Editing home (See page 112.)
- Deleting home (See page 113.)

**(a) Registering home**

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Home” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “Set Home”.



5. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search. (See “Destination search” on page 62.)

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

When registration of home is completed, the "Edit Home" screen will be displayed.



6. Touch "OK".

To edit registered information, see "(b) Editing home" on page 112.

### (b) Editing home

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Home" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Touch "Edit".



5. Touch "Edit" for the item you want to change.

"Name": To edit home name. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 120.)

"Location": To edit location information. (See page 121.)

"Phone #": To edit telephone numbers. (See page 121.)

"Icon": To select icons to be displayed on the map. (See page 119.)

6. Touch "OK".

### — Setting up the “Preset Destinations”

**(c) Deleting home**

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Home” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “Delete”.
5. To delete home, touch “Yes”. To cancel the deletion, touch “No”.

If preset destination has been registered, that information can be recalled by using “Preset Destination” on the “Destination” screen. (See “— Destination search by Preset destinations” on page 64.)

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Preset Destinations”.



- Registering preset destination (See page 114.)
- Editing preset destination (See page 115.)
- Deleting preset destination (See page 116.)

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

### (a) Registering preset destinations

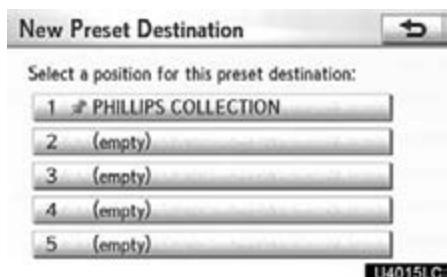
1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Preset Destinations" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Touch "Set".



5. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search. (See "Destination search" on page 62.)



6. Touch a position for this preset destination.

When registration of preset destination is completed, the "Edit Preset Destination" screen will be displayed.



7. Touch "OK".

To edit registered information, see "(b) Editing preset destinations" on page 115.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

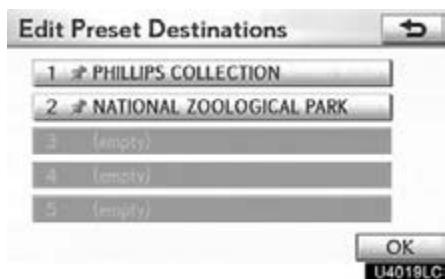
---

**(b) Editing preset destinations**

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Preset Destinations" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Touch "Edit".



5. Touch the button of the desired preset destination.



6. Touch "Edit" for the item you want to change.

"Name": To edit preset destination names. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 120.)

"Location": To edit location information. (See page 121.)

"Phone #": To edit telephone numbers. (See page 121.)

"Icon": To select icons to be displayed on the map. (See page 119.)

7. Touch "OK".

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

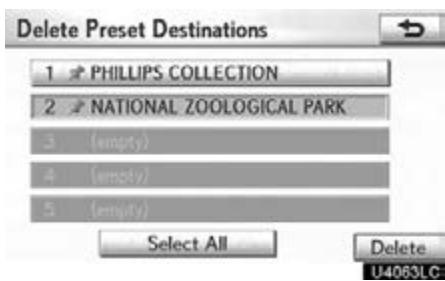
### — Setting up the “Address Book”

#### (c) Deleting preset destinations

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Preset Destinations” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “Delete”.



5. Touch the preset destination for deletion.

“Select All”: To select all preset destinations on the list.

“Unselect All”: To unselect all of the selected preset destinations.

6. Touch “Delete”.

7. To delete preset destination, touch “Yes”. To cancel the deletion, touch “No”.

Points or areas on the map can be registered.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Address Book”.



- Registering address book entries (See page 117.)
- Editing address book entries (See page 118.)
- Deleting address book entries (See page 122.)

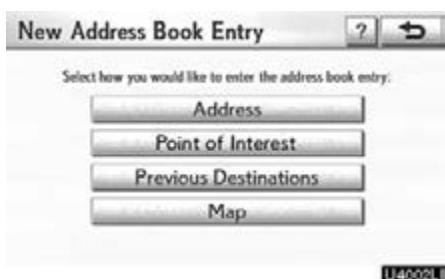
## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

(a) Registering address book entries

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Address Book" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Touch "New".



5. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search. (See "Destination search" on page 62.)

After the address book entry has been registered, the "Edit Address Book Entry" screen will be displayed.

6. Touch "OK".

To edit registered information, see "(b) Editing address book entries" on page 118.

### INFORMATION

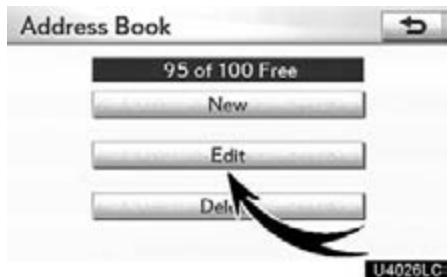
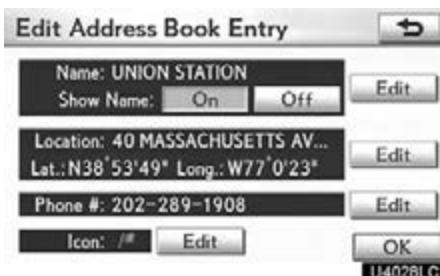
*Up to 100 address book entries can be registered.*

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

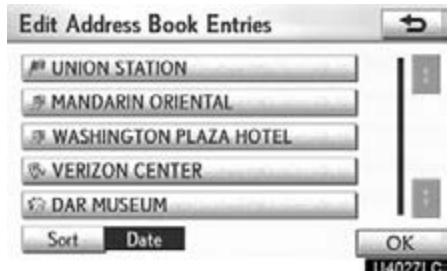
### (b) Editing address book entries

The icon, name, location and/or telephone number of a registered address book entry can be edited.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Address Book" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Touch "Edit".



5. Touch the button of the desired address book entry.

6. Touch "Edit" for the item you want to change.

"Name": To edit address book entry names. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 120.)

"Location": To edit location information. (See page 121.)

"Phone #": To edit telephone numbers. (See page 121.)

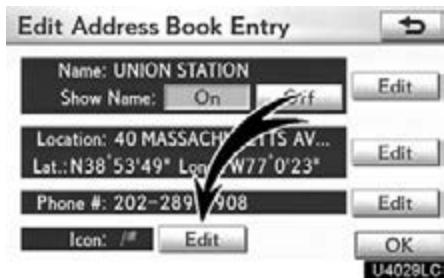
"Icon": To select icons to be displayed on the map. (See page 119.)

7. Touch "OK".

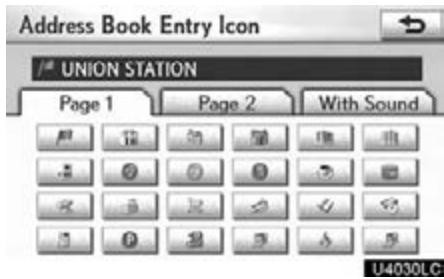
## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

---

- To change “Icon”



1. Touch “Edit” of “Icon”.



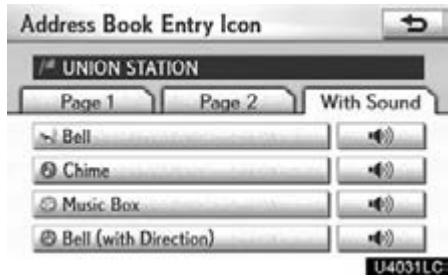
2. Touch the desired icon.

Change pages by touching “Page 1”, “Page 2” or “With Sound” tab.

### SOUND ICONS

You can set a sound for some address book entries. When the vehicle approaches the location of the address book entry, the selected sound will be heard.

1. Touch “With Sound” on the “Address Book Entry Icon” screen.



2. Touch the desired sound icon.

The next screen appears when “Bell (with Direction)” is touched.

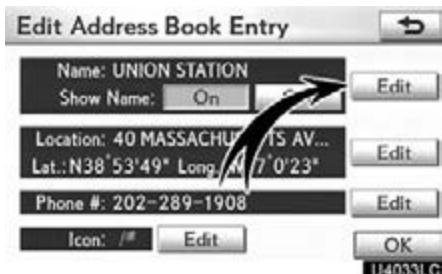


Touch either or to adjust the direction. Touch “OK”.

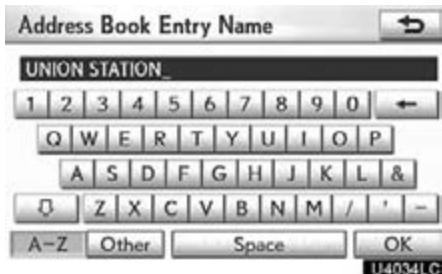
The bell sounds only when the vehicle approaches this point in the direction that has been set.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

- To change “Name”



1. Touch “Edit” of “Name”.



2. Enter the name using the alphanumeric keys.

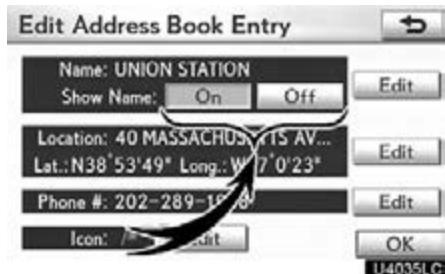
Up to 32 characters can be entered.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

### DISPLAYING MEMORY POINT NAMES

The name of an address book entry can be set to display on the map.



To show the name, touch “On” on the “Edit Address Book Entry” screen. To not show it, touch “Off”.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

---

- To change “Location”

**Edit Address Book Entry**

Name: UNION STATION	Edit
Show Name: On Off	Edit
Location: 40 MASSACHUSETTS AV...	Edit
Lat.: N38°53'49" Long.: W77°0'23"	Edit
Phone #: 202-289-1908	Edit
Icon: /#	Edit
OK U4036LC	

1. Touch “Edit” of “Location”.



2. Touch one of the 8 directional buttons to move the cursor to the desired point on the map.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- To change “Phone #” (telephone number)

**Edit Address Book Entry**

Name: UNION STATION	Edit
Show Name: On Off	Edit
Location: 40 MASSACHUSETTS AV...	Edit
Lat.: N38°53'49" Long.: W77°0'23"	Edit
Phone #: 202-289-1908	Edit
Icon: /#	Edit
OK U4038LC	

1. Touch “Edit” of “Phone #”.

**Address Book Entry Phone #**

202-289-1908	←
1 2 ABC 3 DEF	
4 GHI 5 JKL 6 MNO	
7 PQRS 8 TUV 9 WXYZ	
*# 0	#
OK U4039LC	

2. Enter the number using number keys.

3. Touch “OK”.

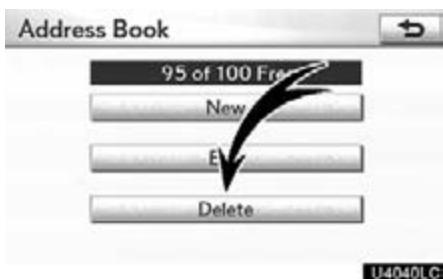
The previous screen will be displayed.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

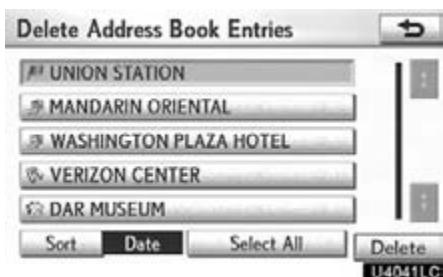
### — Setting up the “Areas to Avoid”

#### (c) Deleting address book entries

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Address Book” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “Delete”.



5. Touch the button to be deleted.  
“Select All”: To select all addresses in the address book.  
“Unselect All”: To unselect all of the selected addresses.
6. Touch “Delete”.
7. To delete the address book entry, touch “Yes”. To cancel the deletion, touch “No”.

Areas you want to avoid because of traffic jams, construction work or other reasons can be registered as areas to avoid.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Areas to Avoid”.



- Registering areas to avoid (See page 123.)
- Editing areas to avoid (See page 124.)
- Deleting areas to avoid (See page 127.)

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

---

**(a) Registering areas to avoid**

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Areas to Avoid" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Touch "New".



5. Enter the location in the same way as for a destination search, or display the map of the area to be avoided. (See "Destination search" on page 62.)



6. Scroll the map to the desired point.

"Adjust Location": To adjust the position in smaller increments.

7. Touch "Enter".



8. Touch either or to change the size of the area to be avoided.

9. Touch "OK".

### INFORMATION

- If a destination is input in the area to avoid or the route calculation cannot be made without running through the area to avoid, a route passing through the area to be avoided may be shown.
- Up to 10 locations can be registered as points/areas to avoid.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

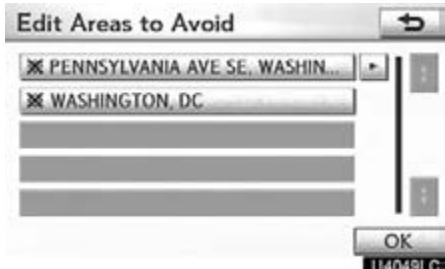
### (b) Editing area to avoid

The name, location and/or area size of a registered area can be edited.

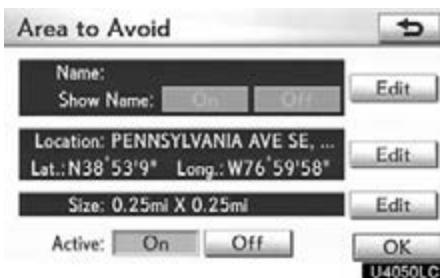
1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Areas to Avoid" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Touch "Edit".



5. Touch the desired area button.



6. Touch "Edit" for the item you want to change.

"Name": To edit the name of the area to avoid. The names can be displayed on the map. (See page 125.)

"Location": To edit area location. (See page 126.)

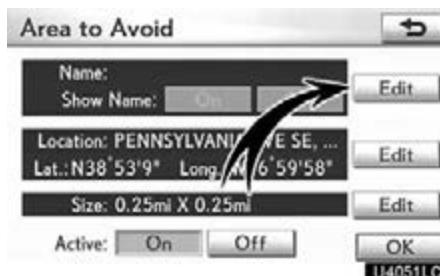
"Size": To edit area size. (See page 126.)

"Active": To turn on or off the area to avoid feature. To turn on the feature, touch "On" on the "Area to Avoid" screen. To turn off the feature, touch "Off" on the "Area to Avoid" screen.

7. Touch "OK".

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

- To change “Name”



1. Touch “Edit” of “Name”.



2. Enter the name using alphanumeric keys.

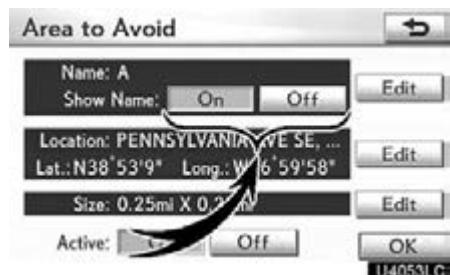
Up to 32 characters can be entered.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

### DISPLAYING NAMES OF AREAS TO BE AVOIDED

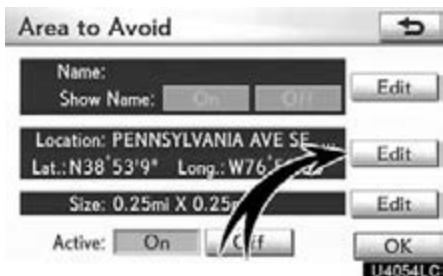
The name of an area to be avoided that may be displayed on the map can be set.



To show the name, touch “On” on the “Area to Avoid” screen. To not show it, touch “Off”.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS

- To change “Location”



1. Touch “Edit” of “Location”.

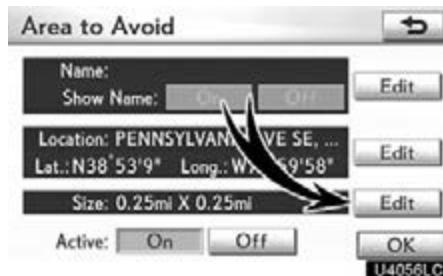


2. Touch the 8 directional button to move the cursor to the desired point on the map.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- To change “Size”



1. Touch “Edit” of “Size”.



2. Touch either or to change the size of the area to be avoided.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

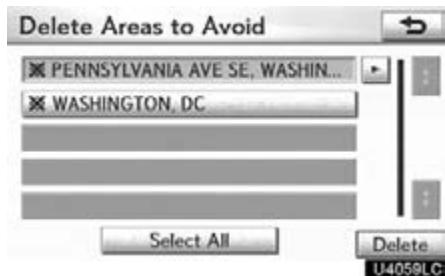
### — Deleting previous destinations

**(c) Deleting areas to avoid**

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Areas to Avoid” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “Delete”.



5. Touch the button to be deleted.

“Select All”: To select all registered areas to avoid in the system.

“Unselect All”: To unselect all registered areas to avoid in the system.

6. Touch “Delete”.

7. To delete the area, touch “Yes”. To cancel the deletion, touch “No”.

The previous destination can be deleted.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Delete Previous Dest.”.



4. Touch the button you want to delete.

“Select All”: To select all previous destinations in the system.

“Unselect All”: To unselect all previous destinations in the system.

5. Touch “Delete”.

## **NAVIGATION SYSTEM: MEMORY POINTS**

---



- 6. To delete the destination, touch "Yes". To cancel the deletion, touch "No".**

## **SECTION 5**

### **TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION**

● Telephone (Hands-free system for cellular phone) .....	130
Enter a Bluetooth® phone .....	134
Call on the Bluetooth® phone .....	139
Receive on the Bluetooth® phone .....	146
Talk on the Bluetooth® phone .....	146
● Fuel consumption .....	149
Past record .....	149
Consumption .....	150
● Calendar .....	151

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

### Telephone (Hands-free system for cellular phone)

Hands-free system allows you to make or receive a call without taking your hands off the steering wheel by connecting your cellular phone.

This system supports Bluetooth®. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system by which you can call without your cellular phone being connected with a cable or placed on a cradle.

If your cellular phone does not support Bluetooth®, this system can not function.

The operating procedure of the phone is explained here.

For registering and setting of the phone, see "Telephone settings" on page 349.

#### CAUTION

While driving, do not use a cellular phone or connect the Bluetooth® phone.

#### NOTICE

*Do not leave your cellular phone in the car. The temperature inside may be high and damage the phone.*

#### INFORMATION

- In the following conditions, the system may not function.
  - The cellular phone is turned off.
  - The current position is outside the communication area.
  - The cellular phone is not connected.
  - The cellular phone has a low battery.
- Even if your cellular phone supports both hands-free and audio Bluetooth® connections, it may not be able to connect to the hands-free connection at the same time.
- When using Bluetooth® audio and hands-free at the same time, the following problems may occur.
  - The Bluetooth® connection may be cut.
  - Noise may be heard on the Bluetooth® audio playback.



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

**INFORMATION**

*This system supports the following service.*

- **Bluetooth® Specification Ver.1.1 or higher**  
*(Recommended: Ver. 2.0 + EDR or higher)*
- **Profiles**
  - **HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver.1.0 or higher**  
*(Recommended: Ver.1.5 or higher)*
  - **OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver.1.1**
  - **PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver.1.0**

*If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone, and take OPP or PBAP service individually.*

*Please go to “<http://www.lexus.com/>” to find approved Bluetooth® phones for this system.*



By pushing the telephone switch above, you can receive a call or hang up without taking your hands off the steering wheel.



► **Microphone**

You can use the microphone above when talking on the phone.

The other party's voice outputs from the front speaker. When the received calls or received voice outputs, the audio from the audio system or voice guidance from the navigation system will be muted.

INFORMATION
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Talk alternately with the other party on the phone. If you talk at the same time, the voice may not reach each other. (It is not a malfunction.)</b></li> <li>● <b>Keep the volume of receiving voice down. Otherwise, an echo will be heard and receiving voice can be heard outside of the vehicle. When you talk on the phone, speak clearly towards the microphone.</b></li> <li>● <b>In the following situations, your voice may not reach the other party.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Driving on unpaved road. (Making a traffic noise.)</b></li> <li>● <b>Driving at the high speed.</b></li> <li>● <b>The windows or moon roof are open.</b></li> <li>● <b>Turning the air-conditioning vents towards the microphone.</b></li> <li>● <b>The sound of the air-conditioning fan is loud.</b></li> <li>● <b>There is an effect from the network of the cellular phone.</b></li> </ul> </li> </ul>



[1] Indicates the condition of Bluetooth® connection.

“Blue” indicates an excellent connection to Bluetooth®.

“Yellow” indicates a bad connection to Bluetooth®, resulting in possible deterioration of voice quality.

■ : No connection to Bluetooth®.

[2] Indicates the amount of battery charge left.

Empty ← → Full

This is not displayed when the Bluetooth® is not connected.

The amount left does not always correspond with the one of your cellular phone. The amount of battery charge left may not be displayed depending on the phone you have. This system doesn't have a charging function.

[3] Indicates the receiving area.

“Rm” is displayed when receiving in Roaming area.

“Hm” is displayed when receiving in Home area.

The receiving area may not be displayed depending on the phone you have.

**[4] Indicates the level of reception.**

The level of reception does not always correspond with the one of your cellular phone.

The level of reception may not be displayed depending on the phone you have.

When you are out of the service area or in a place inaccessible by radio waves, "No Service" is displayed.

**An antenna for the Bluetooth® connection is built in the display. The indication of the Bluetooth® connection may turn yellow and the system may not function when you use the Bluetooth® phone in the following conditions and places.**

- Your cellular phone is hiding behind the display (behind the seat or in the glove box and console box).
- Your cellular phone touches or is covered with metal materials.

Leave the Bluetooth® phone on the place where "Blue" indication is displayed.

**About the phonebook in this system**

The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Phonebook data
- Voice tag
- All of call history
- Speed dial

When you delete the phone, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.

**When you release your car:**

A lot of personal data is registered when you use the Hands-free system. When you release your car, initialize your data. (See "● Delete personal data" on page 334.)

If you initialize it, the former state will never come back again. Pay much attention when initializing the data.

You can initialize the following data in the system.

- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Voice tag data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Volume setting
- Details setting

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

### — Enter a Bluetooth® phone

FCC ID : AJDK021  
IC ID : 775E-K021

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen and RSS-210 of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions : (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### ! CAUTION

**FCC WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure**

This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 20 cm and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

**Co-location:** This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

To use the hands-free system, you need to enter your phone into the system. Once you have registered it, you can make a hands-free call.

If you haven't yet registered any Bluetooth® phones, you must first register your phone according to the following procedure.

Please see “● Registering a Bluetooth® phone” on page 352 of additional registration when registering.



1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.



2. Touch “Phone”.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION



3. Touch "Yes" to connect your phone.



4. When this screen is displayed, input the passcode displayed on the screen into the phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, touch "Cancel".



5. When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed.

You do not need to enter the phone in case of using the same one.



When this screen is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

- Connecting a Bluetooth® phone AUTOMATICALLY



When you register your phone, auto connection will be turned on. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone in a condition where connection can be established.



When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, a nearby cellular phone you have registered is searched for.

Next, the system automatically connects with the latest of the phones connected to in the past.

Then, the connection result is displayed.

This screen appears when the Bluetooth® phone is first connected after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

### INFORMATION

*It may take time, the phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio play.*

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

### MANUALLY

When the auto connection has failed or "Handsfree Power" is turned off, you have to connect Bluetooth® manually.

1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.
2. Touch "Phone".



3. Touch "Connect Phone".



4. Touch "Handsfree Power", or select the phone to connect.



5. The "Connect Bluetooth\*" screen is displayed.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



6. When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed.

Now you can use the Bluetooth® phone.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

---

When you connect the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing



This screen is displayed, and the Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

- Reconnecting the Bluetooth® phone

If the Bluetooth® phone is disconnected with a poor reception from the Bluetooth® network when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the Bluetooth® phone. In this case, the connection result is not displayed.

If the Bluetooth® is disconnected on purpose such as you turned your cellular phone off, this does not happen. Reconnect it by the following methods.

- Select the Bluetooth® phone again.
- Enter the Bluetooth® phone.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

### — Call on the Bluetooth® phone

After you enter the Bluetooth® phone, you can call by using hands-free system. You can call using the 6 methods described below.

- By dial

You can call by inputting the phone number.

This cannot be operated while driving.

1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.

You can also push  of the steering wheel to display the “Phone” screen.



2. Touch “Phone”.



3. Touch the desired key to input the phone number.

Each time you touch , an inputted digit is deleted.

When you touch “Redial”, the number you called last is inputted.

Touch  or push  of the steering wheel.

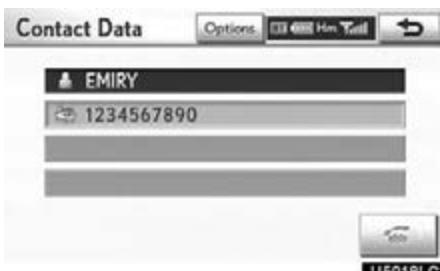
## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

### ● By phonebook

You can call by phonebook data which is transferred from your cellular phone.

The system has one phonebook for each telephone. You can register up to 1000 numbers in total of phonebooks.

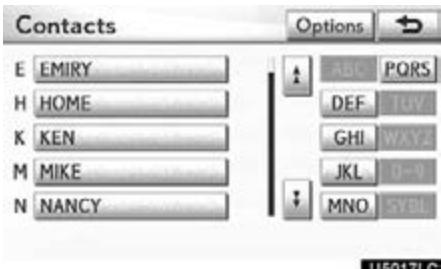
This cannot be operated while driving.



### 3. Select the desired number from the list.

Touch or push of the steering wheel.

### 1. Touch "Contacts".



### 2. Select the desired data from the list.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

---

**When the phonebook is empty**



**1. Touch "Contacts".**



**2. Touch "Yes" if you want to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone.**

**Touch "No" if you want to edit the phonebook.**

- **By speed dial**

You can call using registered phone numbers which can be selected from a phonebook. (See “● Registering the speed dial” on page 369 for registering the speed dial.)

This can be done while driving.



**1. Touch "Speed Dials".**



**2. Touch the desired number to call.**

You can change the page by touching "Speed Dial 2" or "Speed Dial 3" tab.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

- By call history

You can call by call history which has 4 functions below.

**All:**

All the numbers above which were memo-  
rized

**Missed:**

Calls which you missed

**Incoming:**

Calls which you received

**Outgoing:**

Numbers which you called

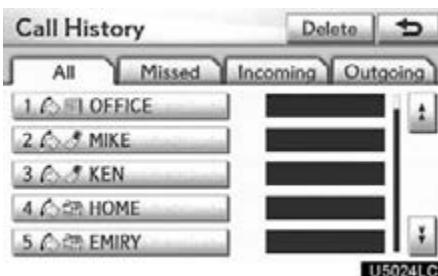
You can call using the latest 5 call history  
items shown by "All" while driving.



3. Touch or push of the steer-  
ing wheel.



1. Touch "Call History".



2. Select the desired data from the list.

When the list is switched, touch "All", "Missed", "Incoming" or "Outgoing" tab.

You can call using the latest call history item.

1. Push  of the steering wheel to display the "Phone" screen.
  2. Push  of the steering wheel to display the "Call History" screen.
  3. Push  of the steering wheel to select the latest history item.
  4. Touch  or push  of the steering wheel to call the latest history item.
- When you call by phonebook, the name (if registered) is displayed.
  - When you call the same number continuously, only the newest number is registered.
  - When a phone number registered in the phonebook is received, the name and the number are displayed.
  - Number-withheld calls are also memorized in the system.
  - A international phone call may not be made depending on the cellular phone which you have.

● By voice recognition



You can call by giving a command. (For the operation and command of voice recognition, see "Voice command system" on page 44.)

This can be operated while driving.

The "Dial by Name" operating procedure is explained here.

Other operating procedures are also similar.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

### DIALING BY NAME

You can call by giving a voice tag registered in the phonebook. For setting the voice recognition, see “—Setting the voice tag” on page 376.

When you select “English” or “Language”, you can call by giving a name registered in the phonebook.

For setting the voice recognition, see “● Registering the phonebook data” on page 363.

Example: Call MIKE.



- You: Push the talk switch.  
System: After the beep, please say a command. Such as “Go Home”, “Destination”, “Phone”, “Audio”, “Information” or “Command List”.  
(beep)  
You: Phone.  
System: Phone.  
“Say a command.” Such as “Dial by Number”, “Dial by Name”, “Redial”, “Call Back” or “Connect Phone”.  
(beep)  
You: Dial by Name.  
System: Dial by Name. Say a name from your contact list.  
(beep)  
You: MIKE.  
System: MIKE. Say the type of number. Such as “Mobile”, “Home”, “Work” or “Other”.  
(beep)  
You: Home.  
System: MIKE. Home.  
Push the off-hook switch to dial or say “Dial”.  
(beep)  
You: Dial.  
System: Dial.  
Now, you can call MIKE.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

---

### Calling without the voice recognition

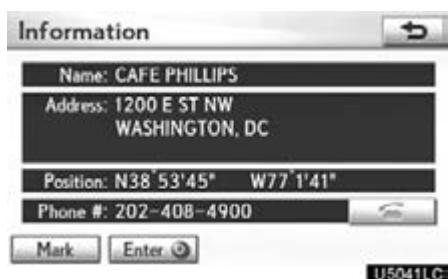
After the entry number is displayed, you can also call by pushing  of the steering wheel or touching “Dial”.

### Cancelling the voice recognition

**The voice recognition will be cancelled when you do the following.**

- Keep on pushing the talk switch.
- Push  of the steering wheel.
- Touch “**Cancel**”. (Except for recognizing the command.)
- Say “**Cancel**”.

### ● By POI\* call



You can call by touching  when it is displayed on the screen from navigation system. (See “POI INFORMATION” on page 36 for details.)

\*: Point of Interest

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

### — Receive on the Bluetooth® phone



When a call is received, this screen is displayed with a sound. Touch or push of the steering wheel to talk on the phone.

To refuse to receive the call:

Touch or push of the steering wheel.

To adjust the volume of received call:

Touch “-” or “+” or use the volume switch of the steering wheel.

On the international phone call, the other party's name may not be displayed correctly depending on the cellular phone which you have.

### — Talk on the Bluetooth® phone



While you are talking on the phone, this screen is displayed. You can do the operation below on the screen.

To adjust the volume of the other party's voice:

Touch “-” or “+” or use the volume switch of the steering wheel.

To hang up the phone:

Touch or push of the steering wheel.

To mute your voice:

Touch “Mute”.

To input a Key:

Touch “0-9”.

To transfer the call:

Touch “Call Transfer”.

You cannot change from Hands-free call to cellular phone call while driving.

When you change from cellular phone call to Hands-free call, the Hands-free screen will be displayed and you can operate it on the screen.

Transferring method and behavior are different depending on the cellular phone which you have.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

When you select "0-9"



Touch the desired number to input the key.

To hang up the phone:

Touch or push of the steering wheel.

This cannot be operated while driving.



If the continuous tone signal is registered in a phonebook, this screen appears. (If not registered, "Send" and "Exit" are not displayed.)

Confirm the number displayed on the screen and touch "Send". The number before marked sign will be sent.

When you touch "Exit", this function will be finished and normal tone screen appears.

To hang up the phone:

Touch or push of the steering wheel.

The continuous tone signal is the marked sign (p or w) and the number following phone number. (ex. 056133w0123p#1\*)

You can do this operation when you want to operate an answering machine or use a telephone service in bank for example. You can register the phone number and the code number in the phonebook.

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

---

- By voice recognition



- Interrupt call



You can operate "Mute" and "Send Tones" by giving a command during a call.

The operating procedure is similar to other voice recognition. (For the operation of voice recognition, see "Voice command system" on page 44.)

When a connected call is interrupted by a third party, this screen is displayed.

Touch or push of the steering wheel to start talking with the other party.

Touch or push of the steering wheel to refuse the call.

## Fuel consumption — — Past record



Fuel consumption information from recent resets will be displayed.



Everytime you touch or push of the steering wheel while interrupt call, the other party will be switched.

If your cellular phone is not accepted for HFP Ver. 1.5, this function can not be used.



1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.



2. Touch "Fuel Consumption".

## TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION

### — Consumption

If the “Past Record” screen does not appear, touch “**Past Record**”.



“Past Record” screen will be displayed.

- [1] Fuel economy since the last reset (blue)**
- [2] Current fuel economy (light blue)**
- [3] Best recorded fuel economy**

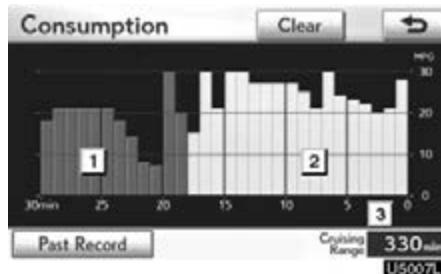
The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last reset. Reset the average fuel consumption to measure the current fuel consumption again. For more information on resetting fuel consumption, see the vehicle owner's manual.

Past record data can be deleted by touching “**Clear**”.

The average fuel consumption of the last 30 minutes will be shown in one-minute blocks.

- 1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.**
- 2. Touch “Fuel Consumption” on the “Information” screen.**

If the “Consumption” screen does not appear, touch “**Consumption**”.



“Consumption” screen will be displayed.

- [1] Fuel consumption in the past 30 minutes (blue)**
- [2] Fuel consumption in the past 30 minutes (light blue)**
- [3] Cruising range**

Average fuel consumption is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was last turned to the ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

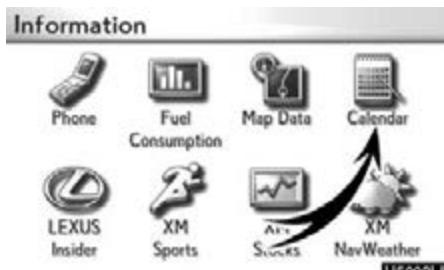
Consumption data can be deleted by touching “**Clear**”.

## Calendar

To view calendar.



- Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.



- Touch "Calendar".



On this screen, a blue line appears under the current date.

**[< M]** or **[> M]**: To change month.

**[< Y]** or **[> Y]**: To change year.

**"Today"**: To display the current month calendar (if another month will be displayed).

**TELEPHONE AND INFORMATION**

---

## **SECTION 6**

### **LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

- Lexus Enform with Safety Connect—Overview ..... 154
- Destination Assist ..... 157
- eDestination ..... 160
- XM® Sports and Stocks ..... 163
- XM NavWeather™ ..... 168
- XM® NavTraffic ..... 173
- Lexus Insider ..... 175

## **LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

---

### **Lexus Enform with Safety Connect—Overview**

Lexus Enform and Safety Connect are subscription-based telematics services that use Global Positioning System (GPS) data, embedded cellular technology and XM® satellite data services to provide safety and security as well as convenience features to subscribers.

Lexus Enform and Safety Connect services are supported by Lexus' designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Lexus Enform service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware-equipped vehicles.

With an active Lexus Enform subscription, the following features are available:

- **Safety Connect features** (See your vehicle Owner's Manual, Section 3 for details.)
  - Automatic collision notification\*<sup>1</sup>
  - Stolen vehicle location
  - Emergency assistance button (SOS)
  - Enhanced roadside assistance
- **Destination Assist** (See page 157.)
- **eDestination** (See page 160.)
- **XM® Sports and Stocks**\*<sup>2</sup> (See page 163.)
- **XM NavWeather™**\*<sup>3</sup> (See page 168.)
- **XM® NavTraffic**\*<sup>3</sup> (See page 173.)

The following navigation-based Lexus Enform features are available without a subscription:

- **Lexus Insider** (See page 175.)
- **Voice Command** (See page 44.)

\*<sup>1</sup>: U.S. Patent No. 7,508,298 B2

\*<sup>2</sup>: Available at no extra charge with an active XM® satellite radio subscription.

\*<sup>3</sup>: Available via separate XM® subscription(s).

### ● Subscription

After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services. A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Lexus dealer, call 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987), or touch the "Destination Assist" button (see page 157) in your vehicle for further subscription details.

XM® NavTraffic and XM NavWeather™ require separate XM® subscription(s). XM® Sports and Stocks is available with an XM® Satellite Radio subscription. After a 90-day free trial, you must set up the appropriate XM® subscription(s) to continue receiving these services.

### ● Availability of service(s)

Lexus Enform premium services Destination Assist and eDestination will function in the contiguous 48 states and D.C. These services may also function in Hawaii and limited areas of Alaska for vehicles that contain map data for those states. They will not function in Canada or in other countries outside the United States.

Lexus Insider and XM® services will function in the contiguous 48 states and Canada. They will not function in Hawaii, Alaska, or countries outside of the U.S. other than Canada.

The XM® NavTraffic, XM NavWeather™, and XM® Sports and Stocks services are available in the contiguous 48 U.S. states and Canada. For details about the XM® service coverage areas, refer to [www.xmradio.com](http://www.xmradio.com) or call XM® Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987.

### ● Activation of service(s)

Enrollment in Lexus Enform with Safety Connect (via your dealership) is required to activate all Enform services.

To receive XM® NavTraffic, XM NavWeather™, and XM® Sports and Stocks services, the XM® service must be activated. To activate the service, call the XM® Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987.

Customers should have their radio ID ready. The radio ID can be found by selecting "channel 000" on the radio. For details, see "(b) Displaying the radio ID" on page 201.

XM® Satellite Radio is responsible for all fees and services, which are subject to change.

#### ■ Certification for Lexus Enform with Safety Connect

**FCC ID: O9EGTM1**

**FCC ID: O6Y-CDMRF101**

#### NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

 **CAUTION**

Exposure to radio frequency signals: The Lexus Enform with Safety Connect system installed in your vehicle is a low power radio transmitter and receiver. The system receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by both U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, government health agencies, and industry reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Lexus Enform with Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

**INFORMATION**

- Available beginning Fall 2009 on select Lexus models. Contact with the Lexus Enform response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, navigation map data, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.
- The Lexus Enform response center will offer support in multiple languages.
- Select Lexus Enform-subscribed vehicles are capable of communicating vehicle information, triggering owner reminder notifications. Owners who do not wish to have their vehicle transmit this information can opt out of the service at the time of enrollment or by calling 1-800-255-3987 and follow the prompt for Safety Connect/Lexus Enform.
- For further details about the service, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Lexus Enform with Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.

## Destination Assist

Destination Assist provides you with live assistance for finding destinations via the Lexus Enform response center. You can request either a specific business, address, or ask for help locating your desired destination by category, such as restaurants, gas stations, shopping centers or other points of interest (POI).

After you tell the agent your choice of destination, its coordinates are sent wirelessly to your vehicle's navigation system.

- **Make a call with Destination Assist**



**1. Push the “DEST” button.**



**2. Touch “Destination Assist”.**

“Destination Assist” screen is displayed on the screen.



**3. Touch “Call Dest. Assist” to contact an agent.**

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT



4. When an agent comes on the line, tell the agent the address, business name, or the type of POI or service you would like to locate.

To adjust the call volume, touch “–” or “+” on the “Destination Assist” screen, or use the volume switch on the steering wheel during the call.

You can end the call at any time by touching the “**Disconnect**” button on the “Destination Assist” screen or the steering-wheel phone on-hook (hang-up) switch.

After the agent helps you determine your location of choice, he or she will place you on hold briefly and wirelessly send the POI to your vehicle’s navigation system. The agent will then instruct you to either touch “**Go to**” or “**Enter**” on the navigation screen in order to save the destination. The agent will then end the call.

5. Touch “**Go to**” or “**Enter**” to set the location as a destination, receive navigation guidance via your navigation system and to save the destination to Destination Assist folder for future reference.

- **Destination Assist History**

Locations you receive via Destination Assist will be saved to the navigation system. Up to 100 destinations can be stored in the Destination Assist history.

1. Push the “DEST” button.
2. Touch “Destination Assist” on the “Destination” screen.



3. Touch “Dest. Assist History”.



4. Select the desired location in order to display its data and be able to be set it as a destination.

Touch “Sort” to sort the locations by either date or name.

### **DELETE      DESTINATION      ASSIST HISTORY**

You can delete destinations from your history.



1. Touch “Delete” on the “Destination Assist History” screen.



2. Touch the individual destination you would like to delete or “Select All”.
3. Touch “Delete” on the screen.

## **LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

### **eDestination**

With the eDestination feature, you can go online, via the Lexus.com owner's Web site, to select and organize destinations of your choice and then wirelessly send them to your vehicle's navigation system. You can store up to 200 locations online to access and update at any time.

Your locations can be organized into up to 20 personalized folders.

You must first go online at [www.lexus.com](http://www.lexus.com) and go to the "Owners" section where you will need to register and log in. After this, you can create your personalized folders containing the locations you wish to send to your vehicle. (See Lexus Enform Guide for more information.)

#### **● Download eDestinations**

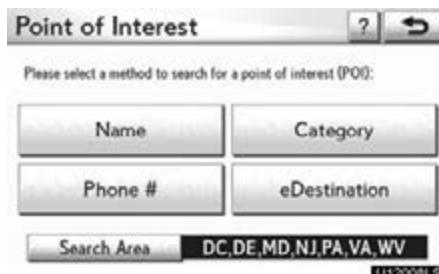
After updating your eDestination folders online, you will need to download the information to update the data in the vehicle.



1. Push the "DEST" button.



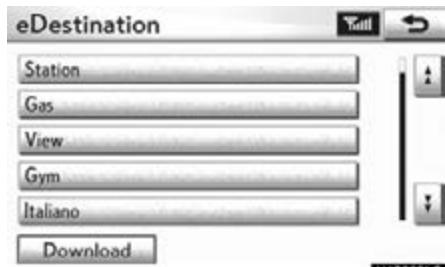
2. Touch "Point of Interest".



3. Touch "eDestination".

"eDestination" screen is displayed on the screen.

**LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

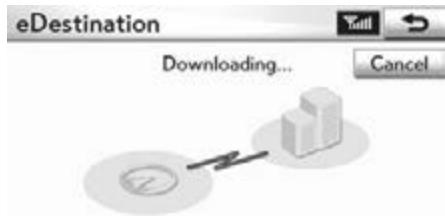


- Set an eDestination in the navigation system for guidance
1. Push the "DEST" button.
  2. Touch "Point of Interest" on the "Destination" screen.
  3. Touch "eDestination" on the "Point of Interest" screen.

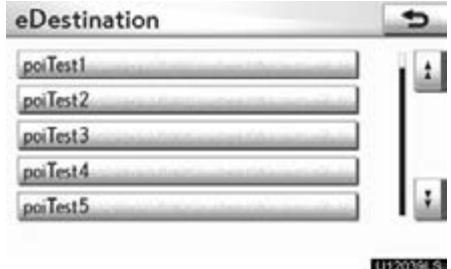
4. Touch "Download".



5. Touch "Yes" to confirm or "No" to cancel download.



4. Touch the desired eDestination folder.



5. Touch the desired location.

When "Yes" is touched, your most recent online eDestination data will be loaded to the navigation system.

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT



The POI will be shown on the map. You can touch the “Go to (circle)” button to set the POI as a destination with route directions.

You can also touch the “Info.” button to display more information about the POI.

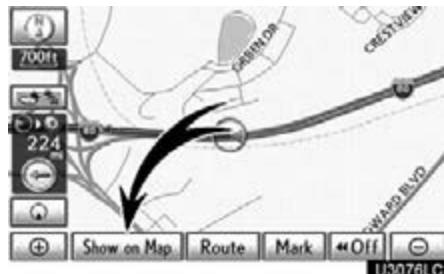


**“Mark”:** To mark the POI on the navigation map.

**“Go to (circle)”:** To set the POI as a destination with route directions.

**“Detail”:** To read the POI notes you entered online, if any.

### ● Show eDestination icons



#### 1. Touch “Show on Map”.



#### 2. Touch “eDest. Icons”.

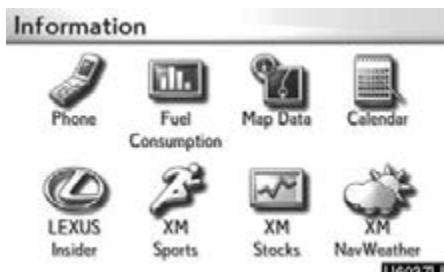
“eDest. Icons” indicator is highlighted.

## XM® Sports and Stocks

XM® Sports and Stocks is a service included with XM® satellite radio subscriptions for Lexus Enform vehicles. With this service, you can receive updates via the navigation system on your personally selected sports teams and stocks.



1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.



2. Touch "XM Sports" or "XM Stocks".

"XM Sports" or "XM Stocks" screen is displayed on the screen.

The following operations can be performed.

### (a) XM Sports

- Receive sports information (See page 164.)
- XM Sports settings (See page 164.)

### (b) XM Stocks

- Receive stock data (See page 166.)
- XM Stocks settings (See page 167.)

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

### (a) XM Sports

You must first add your desired teams prior to receiving information. (See page 165.)

#### ● Receive sports information

1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.
2. Touch “XM Sports” on the “Information” screen.



#### 3. Touch the desired team for which you would like to receive information.

Teams for which there is no current data available will be shaded out and you will not be able to select them.



#### 4. Touch the specific information you would like to receive or touch “Read All” to receive all available information for that team.

The selected information will be read in its entirety.

#### ● XM Sports settings — Add or delete teams

To input your personalized XM Sports team.

1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.
2. Touch “XM Sports” on the “Information” screen.



#### 3. Touch “Options”.



Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

You can also input your personalized XM Sports team from the “Setup” screen. (See “Other settings” on page 403.)

**LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

---

**ADD SPORTS TEAM**

XM Sports

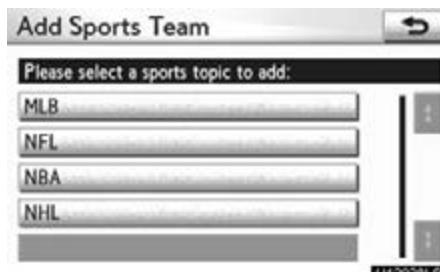
Add Sports Team

Delete Sports Teams

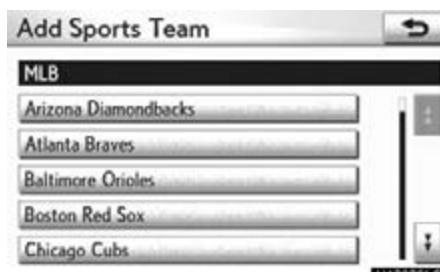


**1. Touch "Add Sports Team".**

Up to 5 teams can be added and saved in the system for which you will receive information. You can change your teams at any time. Teams must be added one at a time.



**2. Touch the sporting league of the team you would like to enter.**



**3. Touch the name of the team you would like to add from the list that appears.**

**4. Touch "Yes" to confirm or "No" to cancel.**

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

### DELETE SPORTS TEAMS



1. Touch "Delete Sports Teams".



2. Touch the sports team that you would like to delete or touch "Select All" to delete all teams.

3. Touch "Delete".



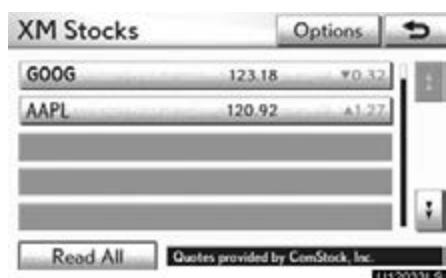
4. Touch "Yes" to confirm or "No" to cancel.

### (b) XM Stocks

You must first add your desired stocks prior to receiving data. (See page 167.)

- Receive stock data

1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.
2. Touch "XM Stocks" on the "Information" screen.



3. Touch the individual stock for which you would like to receive verbal data or touch "Read All".

The available chosen data will be read in its entirety.

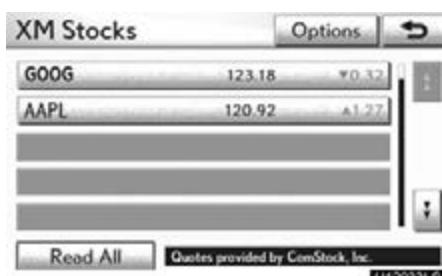
Stock data may be delayed by up to 15 minutes.

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

- XM Stocks settings — Add or delete stocks

To input your personalized XM Stocks settings.

1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.
2. Touch “XM Stocks” on the “Information” screen.



3. Touch “Options”.



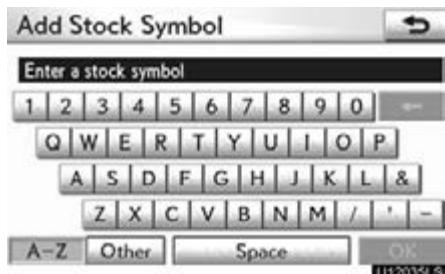
Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

You can also input your personalized XM Stocks settings from the “Setup” screen. (See “Other settings” on page 403.)

### ADD STOCK



1. Touch “Add Stock”.



2. Input the stock symbol you would like to add.

3. When finished, touch “OK” to enter.

You can enter and save up to 10 individual stock symbols for which you would like to receive data. Stocks must be input one at a time. You must know the symbol of the stock you wish to enter.

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

### DELETE STOCKS



1. Touch "Delete Stocks".



2. Touch the stock you would like to delete or touch "Select All".

3. Touch "Delete".



4. Touch "Yes" to confirm or "No" to cancel.

### XM NavWeather™

The subscription-based XM NavWeather™ service allows the navigation system to display weather information on the map. See page 155 for subscription information. The following operations can be performed.

- Show XM NavWeather™ information

Weather forecast information is displayed on the map. (See page 169.)

- Weather information

Weather information for the selected city is displayed. (See page 171.)

- Weather warnings

Weather warnings issued within an approximately 15.5 miles (25 km) radius around the vehicle are displayed on the warning screen. (See page 172.)

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

---

- Show XM NavWeather™ information



1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.



2. Touch "XM NavWeather".

"XM NavWeather" screen is displayed on the screen.

### XMXM NavWeather™ SCREEN



#### **[1] "Info." button**

When the city icon button is touched, the "Info." button will be displayed on the screen. Touching this button displays the "Forecast" screen. (See page 171.)

#### **[2] City icon**

When this button is touched, city names and the "Info." button will be displayed on the upper part of the screen.

#### **[3] "Forecast" button**

When this button is touched, the city selection screen will be displayed.



Touch a city to display weather information. Weather information of the selected city will be displayed. (See page 171.)

## **LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

---

### **[4] “Current Location” button**

When the “Current Location” button is touched, a map of the vehicle’s current location will be displayed.

### **[5] Zoom in/out button**

The scale of the map can be changed. Three zoom levels can be selected; 16 miles (26 km), 30 miles (48 km) and 60 miles (97 km).

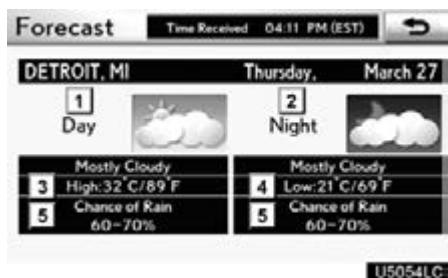
### **[6] Weather icons and grids**

Inclement weather information is displayed on the map using weather icons and grids. Touching an icon shows the related information at the top of the screen.

Icon	Weather
	Tornado
	Hurricane
	Storm
	Flood
	Winter
	Wind
	Extremes
	Other

Icon	Weather
	Hail storm
	Shear storm
	Heavy fog
	Heavy freezing rain/ice
	Heavy snow
	Heavy rain

● Weather information



- 1** Received time
- 2** City name
- 3** Today's date
- 4** Current weather
- 5** Current temperature
- 6** Today's weather
- 7** Tomorrow's weather
- 8** Day after tomorrow's weather
- 9** Observed time
- 10** Specified day's weather

When this button is touched, weather information for a specified day will be displayed.

- 1** Daytime weather
- 2** Nighttime weather
- 3** Maximum temperature
- 4** Minimum temperature
- 5** Precipitation probability

## **LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

---

- **Weather warnings**

Weather warnings issued within an approximately 15.5 miles (25 km) radius around the vehicle are displayed on the warning screen.

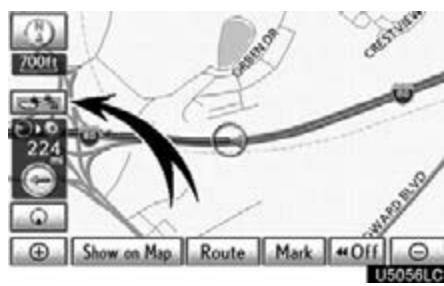


**“Show Map”:** When this button is touched, the “XM NavWeather” screen will be displayed.

**“OK”:** When this button is touched, the screen will return to the map of the current location.

This severe weather warning will display again if the severe weather is within an approximate 7.8 miles (12.5 km) radius around the vehicle.

- **XM NavWeather™ indicator**



When an XM NavWeather™ Warning is issued within the vicinity, the XM NavWeather™ indicator will appear on the screen.

## XM® NavTraffic

The subscription-based XM® NavTraffic service allows the navigation system to display traffic information on the map.

See page 155 for subscription information.

The following operations can be performed.

- **Show XM® NavTraffic Information**

Traffic information is displayed on the map. (See page 173.)

- **Auto Avoid Traffic**

If any heavy congestion or moderate traffic has been detected on the guidance route, it may be possible for you to select another route offered by the system. (See page 343.)

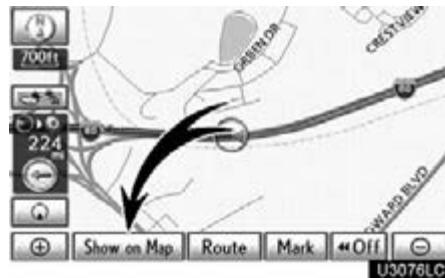
- **Traffic Voice Guidance**

Traffic information is provided using voice guidance. (See page 339.)

- **Show Free Flowing Traffic**

Freely flowing traffic is shown by the arrow on the map. (See page 344.)

- **Show XM® NavTraffic information**



1. Touch "Show on Map".



2. Touch "Traffic Information".

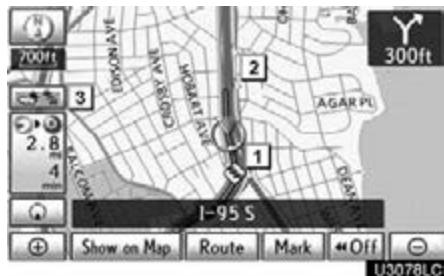
"Traffic Information" indicator is highlighted.

### INFORMATION

- *Traffic voice guidance is available only in English. To select English, see "● Selecting a language" on page 331.*
- *When the "Traffic Information" indicator is dimmed, "Auto Avoid Traffic", "Traffic Voice Guidance" and "Show Free Flowing Traffic" will not operate.*

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

XM® NavTraffic information is displayed on the map.



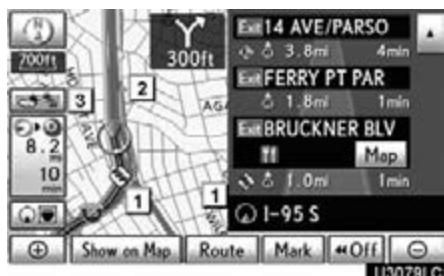
### ► On Map screen

#### 1 XM® NavTraffic icon

When any traffic information has been received, the XM® NavTraffic icon will appear on the map screen. Touching the XM® NavTraffic icon on the screen will start voice guidance for the traffic information. (See page 39.)

#### INFORMATION

***When the XM® NavTraffic icon is selected, voice guidance for the traffic information will start even if "Off" for "Traffic Voice Guidance" is selected.***



### ► On Freeway information screen

#### 2 XM® NavTraffic information arrow

When any XM® NavTraffic information has been received, the XM® NavTraffic information arrow will appear on the map screen. The color of the arrow changes depending on the traffic information received.

“Orange”: Heavy congestion

“Yellow”: Moderate traffic

“Green”: Freely flowing traffic

## Lexus Insider

### **[3] XM® NavTraffic indicator**

When any XM® NavTraffic information has been received, the XM® NavTraffic indicator will appear on the screen. The color of the indicator changes depending on the traffic information received.

“White”: Traffic information has been received.

“Yellow”: Traffic restriction information on the guidance route has been received (screen button\*).

“Orange”: Congestion information on the guidance route has been received (screen button\*).

\*: Touching the XM® NavTraffic indicator will start voice guidance.

Lexus Insider is an optional service that can send audio messages, or articles, to participating owners' vehicles via the navigation system. Potential Lexus Insider subjects might include, for example, Lexus vehicle technology tips, updates on regional Lexus events, or audio excerpts from Lexus Magazine articles. Up to 20 articles can be stored at a time.

You may opt out of receiving Lexus Insider messages at any time. (See page 178.)

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

- View and play received Lexus Insider messages

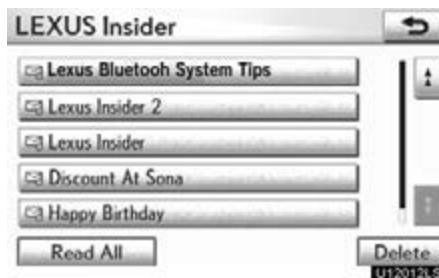


1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.



2. Touch "LEXUS Insider".

"LEXUS Insider" screen is displayed on the screen.



3. Touch the desired article title from the Lexus Insider menu to play that broadcast or touch "Read All" to listen to all stored Lexus Insider broadcasts.

To disrupt the audio read of Lexus Insider, push the "MODE" switch on the steering wheel or push the "AM-FM", "SAT", "DISC" or "AUX-USB" button on the audio system.

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

Icons appear at the left of the Lexus Insider story titles and indicate the following:

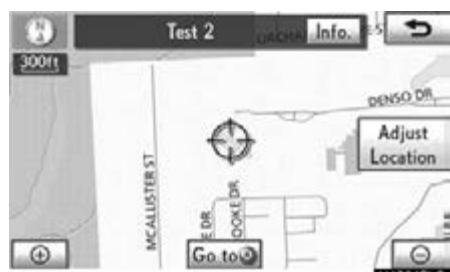
Icon	Article
	Unread article
	Previously read article
	Article with downloadable Point of Interest (POI)



After selecting an individual article, you can then touch “**Next Article**” or “**Previous Article**” to listen to another article.

You can also use the “**^**” or “**▼**” switch on the steering wheel to move to the previous or next article.

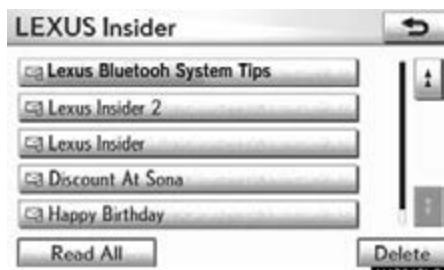
Some Lexus Insider stories will contain a downloadable POI relevant to the content. If it contains a POI, you can touch “**Enter**” to download it to the navigation system.



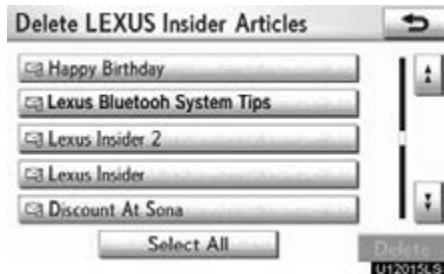
You can touch the “**Go to**” button to set the POI as a destination with route directions.

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

### DELETE LEXUS INSIDER ARTICLE



1. Touch "Delete" on the "LEXUS Insider" screen.



2. Touch the individual article title that you would like to delete or "Select All".
3. Touch "Delete" on the screen.

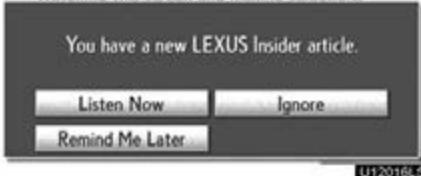
### ● New article notification

When the vehicle is first powered on and a new Lexus Insider article is available, a notification will appear on the navigation screen.

The notice will appear for only approximately 6 seconds unless you choose one of the options listed.

#### CAUTION

Drive safely and obey traffic rules.  
Watching this screen and making selections.



When the new article notification appears, you can select any of the following options.

#### "Listen Now":

Plays newly received Lexus Insider article(s).

#### "Ignore":

Removes notification screen without playing new articles.

#### "Remind Me Later":

Removes notification screen without playing articles. Notification will be displayed again when the vehicle is next powered on.

## LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT

### ● Lexus Insider settings

To change Lexus Insider settings, notification, and opt in or out of article receipt.



LEXUS Insider Settings	
Receive LEXUS Insider	Yes
New Article Notification	On

**Default**

**Save**  
U12018LS

Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.



2. Touch "Other".



3. Touch "LEXUS Insider".

"LEXUS Insider Settings" screen is displayed on the screen.

## **LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

---

### **RECEIVE/OPT OUT OF LEXUS INSIDER**



1. Touch “Receive LEXUS Insider”.
2. Touch “Yes” to receive Lexus Insider articles or “No” to opt out of receiving articles.
3. Touch “Save”.

### **NEW ARTICLE NOTIFICATION**

Automatic notification of new Lexus Insider articles is available and is the default setting.

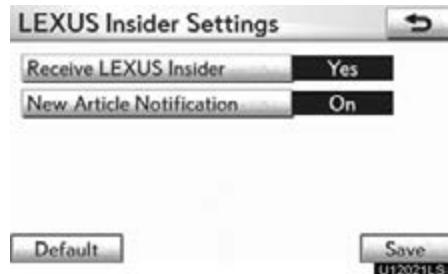


1. Touch “New Article Notification”.
2. Touch “On” or “Off”.
3. Touch “Save”.

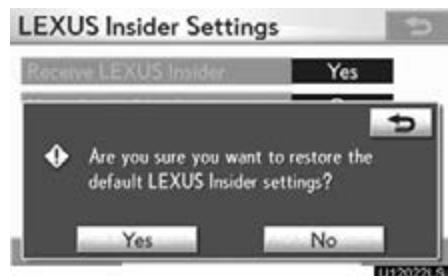
## **LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

---

### **RESTORE THE DEFAULT LEXUS INSIDER SETTINGS**



1. Touch "Default".



2. Touch "Yes" to confirm or "No" to cancel.

**LEXUS ENFORM WITH SAFETY CONNECT**

---

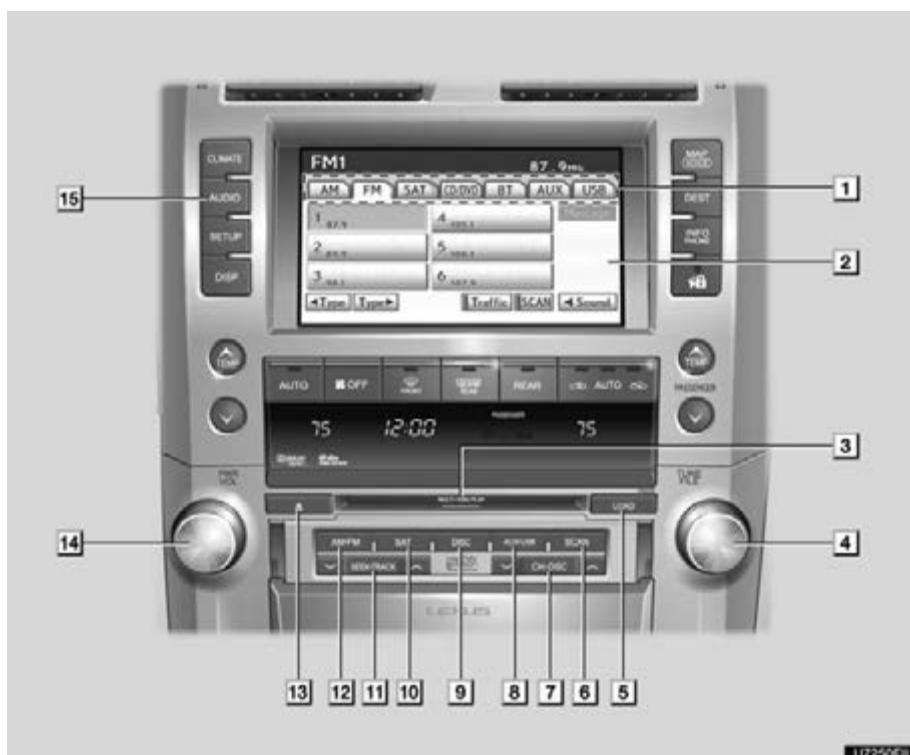
**SECTION 7****AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM**

● Quick reference .....	184
● <b>Using your audio/video system</b> .....	187
Some basics .....	187
Radio operation .....	196
Radio operation (XM® Satellite Radio broadcast) .....	200
CD changer operation .....	206
DVD changer operation .....	220
Bluetooth® audio operation .....	245
USB memory/iPod operation .....	253
● Audio/video remote controls (steering switches) .....	261
● <b>Rear seat entertainment system features</b> .....	263
Using the radio .....	269
Using the DVD changer .....	270
Playing an audio CD/CD text .....	270
Playing MP3/WMA discs .....	271
Playing DVD video/audio .....	271
Using the video mode .....	284
Changing other settings .....	285
● Audio/video system operating hints .....	287

## Quick reference

Operations such as selecting a preset station and adjusting the sound balance are carried out on the screen. To display the audio screen, push the “AUDIO” button.

### ► DVD changer



#### 1 Function menu tab

To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, touch the screen tabs. For details, see page 190.

#### 2 Function menu display screen

To control the radio, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, touch the screen buttons. For details, see page 190.

#### 3 Disc slot

Insert discs into the slot after pushing “LOAD” button. For details, see page 220.

#### 4 “TUNE/FILE” knob

Turn this knob to move the station band and files up or down. For details, see pages 196, 201, 216 and 257.

#### 5 “LOAD” button

Push this button to insert the discs. For details, see page 220.

#### 6 “SCAN” button

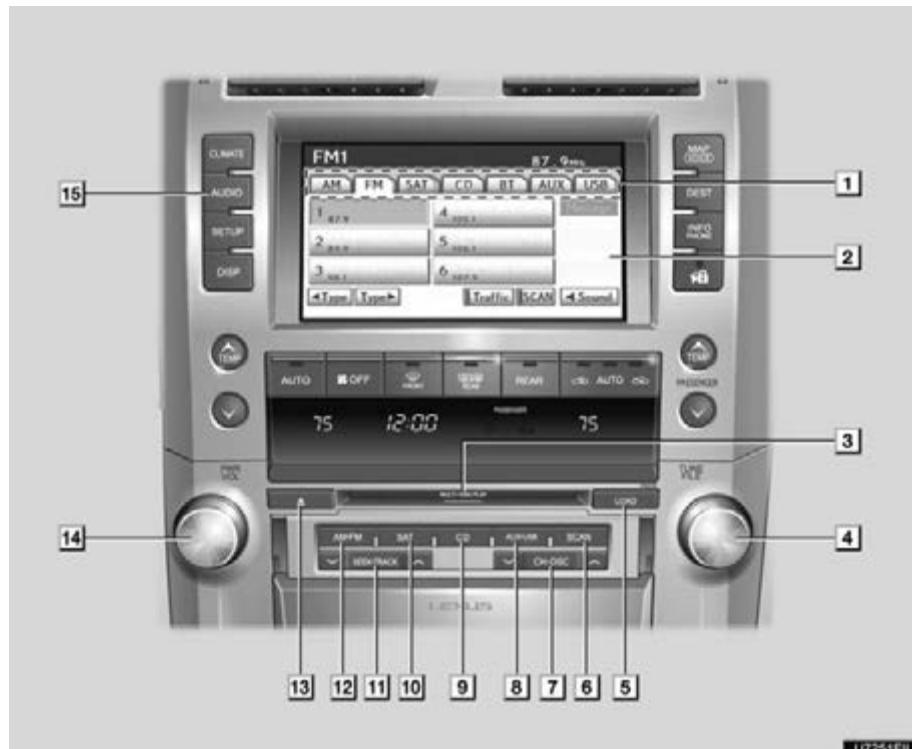
Push this button to scan radio stations or scan the files or tracks. For details, see pages 197, 203, 213, 217, 218 and 259.

#### 7 “CH-DISC” button

Push the “^” or “v” button to select a preset station or a selected disc. For details, see pages 197, 203, 223 and 225.

- [8] “AUX-USB” button**  
Push this button to turn the Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod on. For details, see pages 190, 195, 245 and 253.
- [9] “DISC” button**  
Push this button to play a DVD. For details, see pages 190 and 225.
- [10] “SAT” button**  
Push this button to choose a SAT station. For details, see pages 190, 196 and 200.
- [11] “SEEK-TRACK” button**  
Push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” button to seek up or down for a station, or to access a desired track, file or chapter. For details, see pages 197, 203, 212, 215, 231, 232, 242, 251 and 257.
- [12] “AM-FM” button**  
Push this button to choose a radio station. (AM, FM1, FM2)  
For details, see pages 190 and 196.
- [13] “ $\blacktriangle$ ” button**  
Push this button to eject the discs.  
For details, see page 223.
- [14] “PWR/VOL” knob**  
Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume. For details, see page 189.
- [15] “AUDIO” button**  
Push this button to display the audio control screen. For details, see page 189.

## ► CD changer

**[1] Function menu tab**

To control the radio, CD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, touch the screen tabs. For details, see page 190.

**[2] Function menu display screen**

To control the radio, CD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod, touch the screen buttons. For details, see page 190.

**[3] Disc slot**

Insert discs into the slot after pushing "LOAD" button. For details, see page 206.

**[4] "TUNE/FILE" knob**

Turn this knob to move the station band and files up or down. For details, see pages 196, 201, 216 and 257.

**[5] "LOAD" button**

Push this button to insert the discs. For details, see page 206.

**[6] "SCAN" button**

Push this button to scan radio stations or scan the files or tracks. For details, see pages 197, 203, 213, 217, 218 and 259.

**[7] "CH-DISC" button**

Push the "▲" or "▼" button to select a preset station or a selected disc. For details, see pages 197, 203, 208 and 211.

## Using your audio/video system — — Some basics

- [8] “AUX-USB” button**  
Push this button to turn the Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory or iPod on. For details, see pages 190, 195, 245 and 253.
- [9] “CD” button**  
Push this button to play a CD. For details, see pages 190 and 210.
- [10] “SAT” button**  
Push this button to choose a SAT station. For details, see pages 190, 196 and 200.
- [11] “SEEK-TRACK” button**  
Push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” button to seek up or down for a station, or to access a desired track or file. For details, see pages 197, 203, 212, 215, 251 and 257.
- [12] “AM-FM” button**  
Push this button to choose a radio station. (AM, FM1, FM2)  
For details, see pages 190 and 196.
- [13] “ $\blacktriangle$ ” button**  
Push this button to eject the discs.  
For details, see page 208.
- [14] “PWR/VOL” knob**  
Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume. For details, see page 189.
- [15] “AUDIO” button**  
Push this button to display the audio control screen. For details, see page 189.

This section describes some of the basic features of your audio/video system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

Your audio/video system works when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

FCC ID : AJDK021  
IC ID : 775E-K021

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen and RSS-210 of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions : (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



### CAUTION

**FCC WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure**

This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 20 cm and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

**Co-location:** This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

● **Laser products**

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes yourself. This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.
- This product utilizes a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

(a) Voice command system



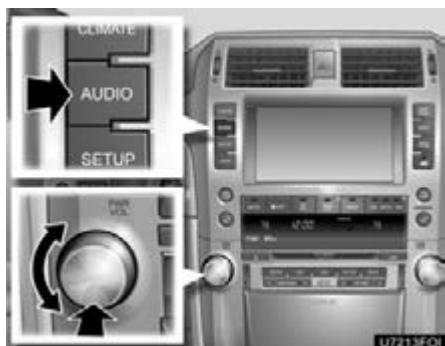
By pushing the switch above, you can operate the voice command system.

For the operation of the voice command system and the list of commands, see pages 44 and 49.

**NOTICE**

*To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio/video system on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.*

(b) Turning the system on and off



**“AUDIO”:** Push this button to display touch-screen buttons for audio system (audio control mode).

**“PWR/VOL”:** Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off. Turn this knob to adjust the volume. The system turns on in the last mode used.

You can select the function that enables automatic return to the previous screen from the audio screen. See page 330 for details.

(c) Open the lid



**Push the back part of the lid to open.  
Push the lid again to close.**

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

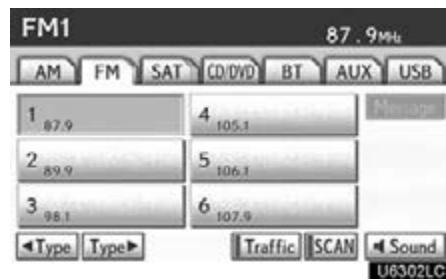
### (d) Switching between functions



#### ► DVD changer image

Push the “AM-FM”, “SAT”, “DISC”, “CD” or “AUX-USB” button to turn on the desired mode.

### 1. Push the “AUDIO” button.



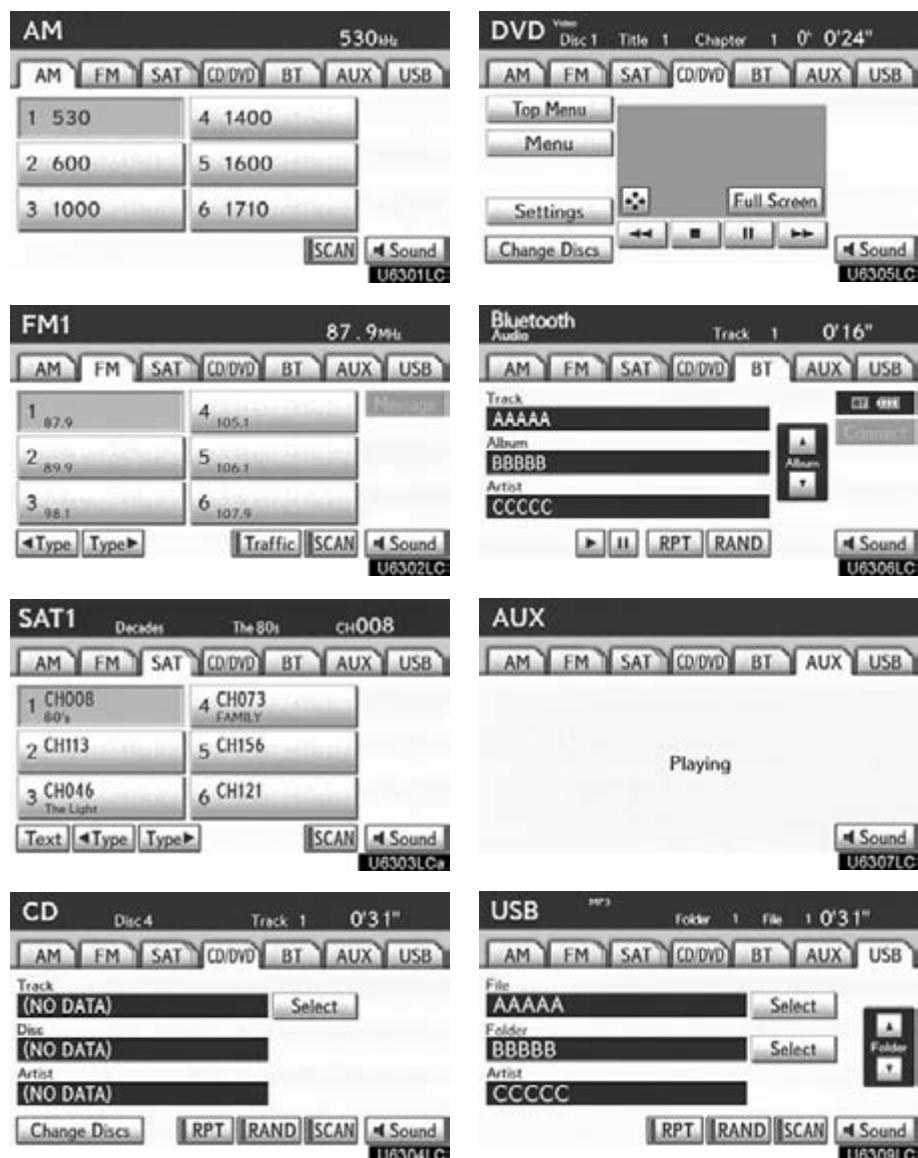
### 2. Touch “AM”, “FM”, “SAT”, “CD”, “CD/DVD”, “BT”, “AUX” or “USB” tab to turn on the desired mode.

Push these buttons or tabs if you want to switch from one mode to another.

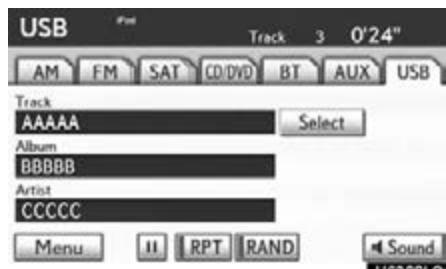
If the disc is not set, the CD changer/DVD changer does not turn on.

You can turn off the CD changer/DVD changer by ejecting a disc.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM



## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM



The screen buttons for radio, CD changer, DVD changer, Bluetooth® audio player, AUX, USB memory and iPod operation are displayed on the screen when the audio control mode is selected.

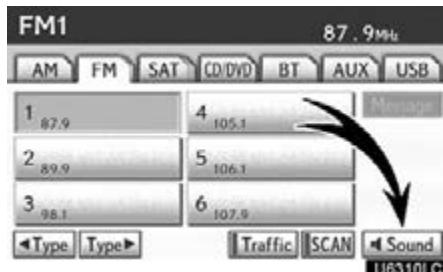
Touch the tab to select the desired mode when the audio control mode is selected.

### INFORMATION

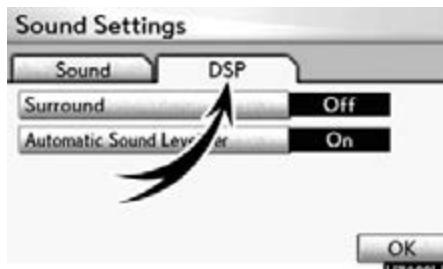
- If the system does not respond to a touch of a touch screen button, move your finger away from the screen and then touch it again.**
- You cannot operate dimmed touch-screen buttons.**
- Wipe off fingerprints using a glass cleaning cloth. Do not use chemical cleaners to clean the touch screen.**

### (e) DSP control

- Push the “AUDIO” button.



- Touch “Sound” to display the sound adjustment screen.



- Touch “DSP” tab to display this screen.

- Touch the desired button.

#### Surround function:

Touch “On” of “Surround” and touch “OK”.

The surround function will turn on.

#### Automatic sound levelizer (ASL):

When the audio sound becomes difficult to hear due to road noise, wind noise or other noises while driving, touch “On”. The system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to the speed of car, wind noise or other noise.

- Touch “OK”.

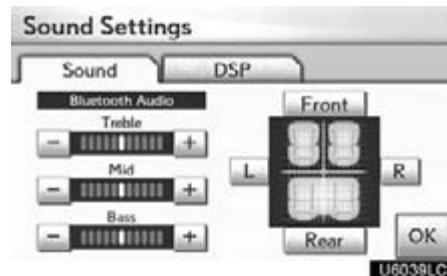
**(f) Tone and balance****Tone**

How good an audio program sounds to you is largely determined by the mix of the treble, mid and bass levels. In fact, different kinds of music and vocal programs usually sound better with different mixes of treble, mid and bass.

**Balance**

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is also important.

Keep in mind that if you are listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of one group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.



**1. Touch "Sound" tab to display this screen.**

**2. Touch the desired button.**

"**Treble**" "+" or "-": Adjust high-pitched tones.

"**Mid**" "+" or "-": Adjust mid-pitched tones.

"**Bass**" "+" or "-": Adjusts low-pitched tones.

"**Front**" or "**Rear**

"**L**" or "**R**

**3. Touch "OK".**

The tone of each mode (for such as AM, FM, CD changer and DVD changer) can be adjusted.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

### (g) Selecting screen size (DVD changer only)

Before selecting screen size, it is necessary to insert a DVD disc and select DVD mode.

1. Push the "AUDIO" button.
2. Touch "CD/DVD" tab.



3. Touch "Settings".



4. Touch "Wide".



5. Touch the desired button.

"Normal": Displays a 3 : 4 screen, with either side in black.

"Wide 1": Widens the 3 : 4 screen horizontally to fill the screen.

"Wide 2": Widens the 3 : 4 screen vertically and horizontally, in the same ratio, to fill the screen.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

6. Touch "OK".

**(h) Your CD or DVD changer**

When you insert a disc, push the “LOAD” button and gently push the disc in with the label side up. This CD or DVD changer can store up to six discs.

The changer is intended for use with 4.7 in. (12 cm) discs only.

**(i) AUX port**

The sound of portable audio players connected to the AUX port can be enjoyed. Push the “AUX-USB” button, or push the “AUDIO” button to display audio screen and touch “AUX” tab to switch to AUX mode. When the portable audio player is not connected to the AUX port, the tab will tone down. For details, refer to the “Owner’s Manual”.

**(j) USB port**

It is available to connect a USB memory/iPod device with the USB port. When the USB memory/iPod is not connected to the USB port, the tab will tone down. For details, see “(a) Connecting a USB memory or iPod” on page 254.

**NOTICE**

- *Do not stack up two discs for insertion, or it will cause damage to the changer. Insert only one disc into the slot at a time.*
- *Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the changer. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.*

**— Radio operation**

## (a) Listening to the radio



**Push the “AM-FM” button, or push the “AUDIO” button to display audio screen and touch “AM” or “FM” tabs to choose either an AM or FM station.**

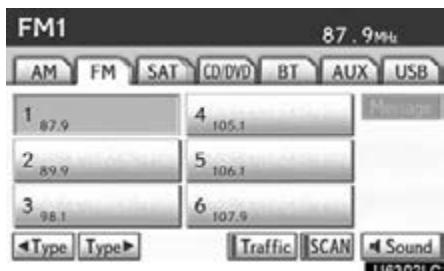
“AM”, “FM1” or “FM2” appears on the screen.

If your vehicle is equipped with a satellite radio broadcast system, when you push the “SAT” button or touch “SAT” tab on audio screen, “SAT1”, “SAT2”, “SAT3” station appears on the display. For details about satellite radio broadcast, see “— Radio operation (XM® Satellite Radio broadcast)” on page 200.



**Turn the knob clockwise to step up the station band or counterclockwise to step down.**

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. “ST” appears on the screen. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception. In this case, “ST” disappears from the screen.

**(b) Presetting a station**

- 1. Tune in the desired station.**
- 2. Touch one of the buttons (1 — 6) you want and hold it until a beep is heard. This sets the station to the button and the frequency appears on the button.**

Each radio mode (AM, FM1 or FM2) can store up to 6 stations. To change the preset station to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset station memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

**(c) Selecting a station**

Tune in the desired station using one of the following methods.

**Preset tuning:** Touch the button (1 — 6) or push the “^” or “▼” button of “CH-DISC” for the station you want. The button is highlighted and the station frequency appears on the screen.

**Seek tuning:** Push the “^” or “▼” button of “SEEK-TRACK”. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched automatically one after another.

**To scan all the frequencies:** Push the “SCAN” button or touch “SCAN” on the screen briefly. “SCAN” appears on the screen. The radio will find the next station and stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a station, push the “SCAN” button or touch “SCAN” again.

**To scan the preset stations:** Push the “SCAN” button or touch “SCAN” on the screen for longer than a second. “P. SCAN” appears on the screen. The radio will tune in the next preset station, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To select a station, push the “SCAN” button or touch “SCAN” again.

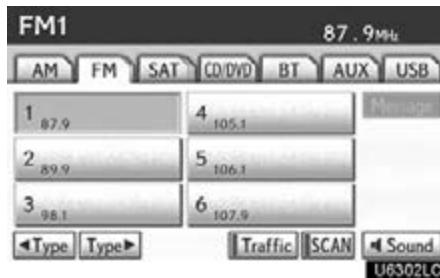
**(d) Radio Data System (if equipped)**

Your audio system is equipped with Radio Data Systems (RDS). RDS mode provides you to receive text messages from radio stations that utilize RDS transmitters.

When RDS is on, the radio can

- only select stations of a particular program type,
- display messages from radio stations,
- search for a stronger signal station.

RDS features are available for use only on FM stations which broadcast RDS information.



**“Type ◀▶”**

If the system receives no RDS stations, “NO-PTY” appears on the display.

Each time you touch “◀ Type ” or “Type ▶”, the program type changes as in the following:

- ROCK
- MISC (Miscellaneous)
- INFORM (Information)
- EASY LIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and Jazz)
- R & B (Rhythm and Blues)
- RELIGION
- ALART (Emergency message)



#### "Message"

If the system receives a radio text from RDS station, "MSG" appears on the display. Touch "**Message**", and a text message is displayed on the screen. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

When you touch "**Message Off**", the display returns.

#### "TypeSeek"

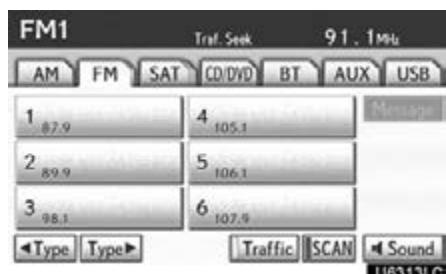
When a program is set, "Type Seek" appears. Touch the button and the system starts to seek the station in the relevant program type.

If any type program station is not found, "Nothing" appears on the display.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

### —Radio operation (XM® Satellite Radio broadcast) (if equipped)

#### (e) Traffic announcement (if equipped)



#### “Traffic”

A station that regularly broadcasts traffic information is automatically located.

When you touch “**Traffic**”, “Traf. Seek” appears on the display and the radio will start seeking any traffic program station.

If no traffic program station is found, “Nothing” appears on the display.

If a traffic program station is found, the name for traffic program station is displayed for a while until a traffic announcement is received.

To listen to a satellite radio broadcast in your vehicle, a subscription to the XM® Satellite Radio service is necessary.

#### (a) How to subscribe to an XM® Satellite Radio

An XM® Satellite Radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provided under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous U.S. states and some Canadian provinces.

#### How to subscribe:

You must enter into a separate service agreement with the XM® Satellite Radio in order to receive satellite broadcast programming in the vehicle. Additional activation and service subscription fees apply that are not included in the purchase price of the vehicle and optional digital satellite tuner.

For complete information on subscription rates and terms, or to subscribe to the XM® Satellite Radio.

U.S.A. —

Visit on the web at [www.xmradio.com](http://www.xmradio.com) or call 1-877-515-3987.

Canada —

Visit on the web at [www.xmradio.ca](http://www.xmradio.ca) or call 1-877-515-3987.

The XM® Satellite Radio is solely responsible for the quality, availability and content of the satellite radio services provided, which are subject to the terms and conditions of the XM® Satellite Radio customer service agreement.

Customers should have their radio ID ready; the radio ID can be found by tuning to "channel 000" on the radio. For details, see "(b) Displaying the radio ID" below.

All fees and programming are the responsibility of the XM® Satellite Radio and are subject to change.

#### **Satellite tuner technology notice:**

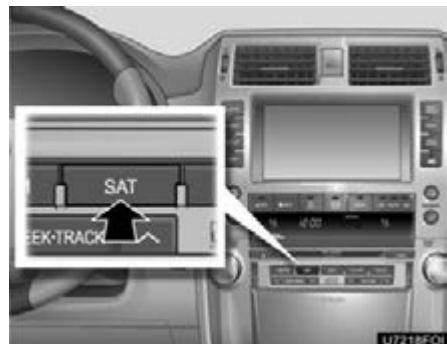
Lexus's satellite radio tuners are awarded Type Approval Certificates from XM® Satellite Radio Inc. as proof of compatibility with the services offered by the XM® Satellite Radio.

#### **(b) Displaying the radio ID**

Each XM® tuner is identified with a unique radio ID. You will need the radio ID when activating XM® service or when reporting a problem.

If you select the "CH 000" using the "TUNE/FILE" knob, the ID code of 8 alphanumeric characters appears. If you select another channel, display of the ID code is canceled. The channel(000) alternates the display between the radio ID and the specific radio ID code.

#### **(c) Listening to satellite radio**



Push the "SAT" button, or push the "AUDIO" button to display audio screen and touch "SAT" tab to choose a SAT channel.

"SAT1", "SAT2" or "SAT3" appears on the screen.



Turn this knob to select the next or previous channel.

If you turn continuously, you can rapidly scroll forward or down through the channels.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### (d) Channel category



Touch either “◀ Type” or “Type ▶” to go to the next or previous category.

### (e) Presetting a channel

#### 1. Tune in the desired channel.



#### 2. Touch one of the channel selector buttons (1 — 6) and hold it until a beep is heard.

This sets the channels to the button and the name and number of the channel appears on the button.

Each button can store three SAT channels. To change the preset channel to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset channel memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

**(f) Selecting a channel**

Tune in the desired channel using one of the following methods.

**Preset tuning:** Touch the channel selector button (1 — 6) or push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” button of “**CH-DISC**” for the channel you want. The button (1 — 6) is highlighted and channel number appears on the display.

**To select channel within the current category:** Push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” button of “**SEEK-TRACK**”. The radio will step up or down the channel within the current channel category.



**To scan the currently selected channel category:** Touch “**SCAN**” or push the “**SCAN**” button briefly. “**SCAN**” appears on the display. The radio will find the next channel in the same channel category, stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a channel, touch “**SCAN**” or push the “**SCAN**” button a second time.

**To scan the preset channels:** Touch “**SCAN**” or push the “**SCAN**” button and hold it until you hear a beep. “**P.SCAN**” appears on the display. The radio will find the next preset channel, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset channel. To select a channel, touch “**SCAN**” or push the “**SCAN**” button a second time.

**(g) Displaying the title and name**

When you touch “**Text**”, the song/program title and the artist name/feature are displayed.

Up to 16 alphanumeric characters can be displayed. (Some information will not be fully displayed.)

When you touch “**Text**” again, the display returns.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### (h) If the satellite radio tuner malfunctions

When problems occur with the XM® tuner, a message will appear on the display. Referring to the table below to identify the problem, take the suggested corrective action.

ANTENNA	The XM® antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM® antenna cable is attached securely.
	A short circuit occurs in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer for assistance.
UNAUTH	You have not subscribed to the XM® Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact the XM® Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose the "CH000" and all free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact the XM® Satellite Radio.
NO SIGNAL	The XM® signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
LOADING	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
OFF AIR	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.
-----	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.
CH UNAVL	The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM® Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987.

NOTICE	INFORMATION
<p><b>This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.</b></p> <p><b>If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>— Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.</li><li>— Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.</li><li>— Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.</li><li>— Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.</li></ul> <p><b>Information to user</b></p> <p><b>Alteration or modifications carried out without appropriate authorization may invalidate the user's right to operate the equipment.</b></p>	<p><b>This XM® tuner supports "Audio Services" (Music and Talk) of only XM® Satellite Radio and "Text Information"*, linked to the respective "Audio Services".</b></p> <p><b>*: Text Information includes, Station Name, (Artist) Name, (Song) Title and Category Name.</b></p>

## — CD changer operation

### (a) Inserting discs

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch must be in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Your CD changer can store up to 6 discs.  
You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

#### • Setting a single disc:



#### 1. Push the “LOAD” button briefly.

The orange indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the orange indicators change to green and stay on, the CD changer door will open.



**2. Insert only one disc while the CD changer door is open.**

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

After insertion, the set disc is automatically loaded.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, "Check CD" appears on the screen.

If you do not insert the disc within 15 seconds after pushing the "LOAD" button, a beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

If you need to insert the next disc, repeat the same procedure to insert another disc.

● **Setting all the discs:**



**1. Push the "LOAD" button until you hear a beep.**

The orange indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the orange indicators change to green and stay on, the CD changer door will open.



**2. Insert only one disc while the CD changer door is open.**

The CD changer door closes and the orange indicators start blinking.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

3. Insert the next disc after the orange indicators change to green and stay on and the CD changer door opens.
4. Repeat this procedure until you insert all the discs.

To cancel the operation, push the “LOAD” button briefly.

If you do not insert the discs within 15 seconds after pushing the “LOAD” button, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

### NOTICE

*Do not insert one disc stacked on top of another one or feed them in continuously, to prevent discs from getting stuck in the changer.*

### INFORMATION

*Under extremely cold conditions, the display may react slowly.*

### (b) Ejecting discs

- A single disc alone:



1. Push the “^” or “▼” button of “CH-DISC” or touch the disc number button on the “Change Discs” screen to highlight the disc number you want to eject.

To display the “Change Discs” screen, touch “Change Discs” on each audio control screen.



**2. Push the “▲” button for the disc briefly.**

At this time, the orange indicators of the slot start blinking and the disc is ejected.

**3. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.**

● **Ejecting all the discs:**



**1. Push the “▲” button for the disc until you hear a beep.**

At this time, the orange indicators of the slot start blinking and a disc is ejected.

**2. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.**

The indicators start blinking again and the next disc is ejected.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds after it is ejected, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

When all the discs are removed, the indicators go out.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---



The numbers of the trays where the disc is not set are dimmed.

### (c) Playing a disc



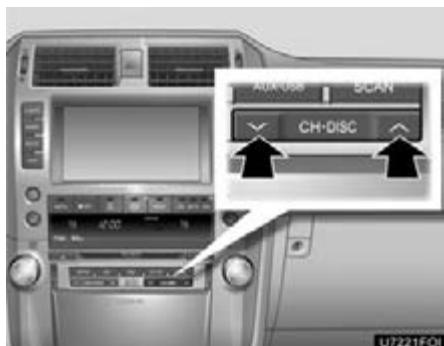
**Push the "CD" button, or push the "AUDIO" button to display audio screen and touch "CD" tab if the discs are already loaded in the changer.**

The discs set in the changer are played continuously, starting with the last disc you inserted. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track number and the time from the beginning of the program appear on the screen.

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The changer will skip any empty disc trays.

## (d) Selecting a desired disc

**On the screen:**

**Touch “CD” tab, then touch “Change Discs”.**

The selected disc number is highlighted.

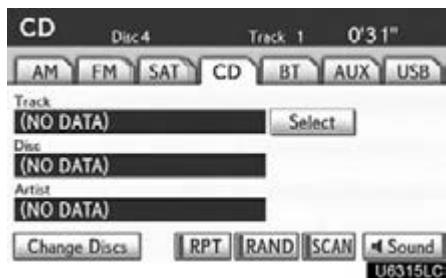
The changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

**On the audio panel:**

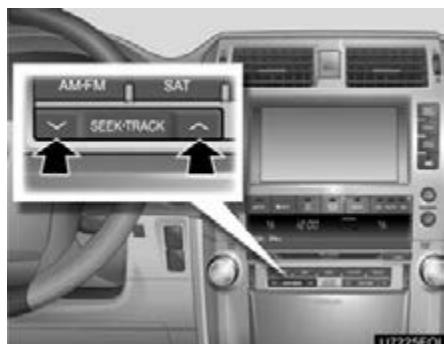
**Push the “^” or “▼” button of “CH-DISC”.**

When you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

## (e) Playing an audio disc



**Touch “CD” tab, then touch “Change Discs”. Choose an audio disc number to display this screen.**

**SELECTING A DESIRED TRACK**

Touch the desired track number. The changer will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

: By touching this button, the list moves up by 5 track groups. If this button is touched when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By touching this button, the list moves down by 5 track groups. If this button is touched when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

, : If appears to the right of the item name, the complete name is too long for the display.

Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to scroll the beginning of the name.

**Fast forward:** Push the “” button of “SEEK-TRACK” and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing from that position.

**Reverse:** Push the “” button of “SEEK-TRACK” and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing.

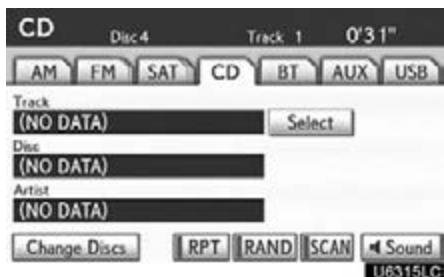
**“SEEK-TRACK” button:** Use for direct access to a desired track.

Push the “” or “” button of “SEEK-TRACK” and repeat it until the desired track number appears on the screen. As you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

**“Select” for Track:** The desired track can be selected from a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Touch “Select”. The track list is displayed.

### SEARCHING FOR A DESIRED TRACK OR DISC



#### Searching for a desired track —

Touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button briefly while the disc is playing.

“SCAN” appears on the screen. The changer will play the next track for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a track, touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button a second time. If the changer reaches the end of the disc, it will continue scanning at track 1.

After all the tracks are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

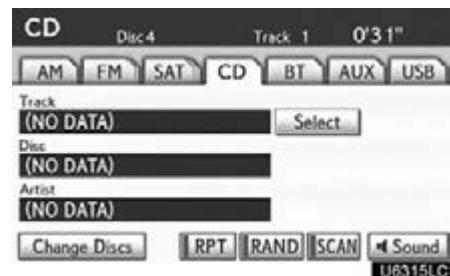
#### Searching for a desired disc —

Touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button for longer than a second while the disc is playing.

“D.SCAN” appears on the screen. The program at the beginning of each audio disc will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button a second time.

After all the audio discs are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

### OTHER FUNCTIONS



**“RPT”:** Use it for automatic repeat of the track or disc you are currently listening to.

#### Repeating a track —

Touch “RPT” briefly while the track is playing. “RPT” appears on the screen. When the track is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the track and play the track again. To cancel it, touch “RPT” once again.

#### Repeating a disc —

Touch “RPT” for longer than a second while the disc is playing. “D.RPT” appears on the screen. When the disc is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the disc and play the disc again. To cancel it, touch “RPT” once again.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

**“RAND”:** Use it for automatic and random selection.

### Playing the tracks on one disc in random order —

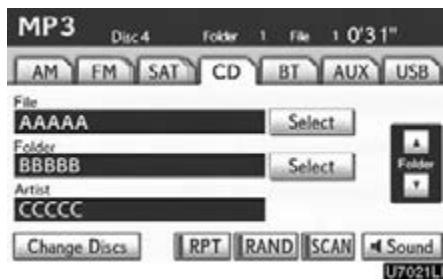
Touch “RAND” briefly while the disc is playing. “RAND” appears on the screen. The system selects a track on the disc being listened to in random order. To cancel it, touch “RAND” once again.

### Playing the tracks on all the audio discs in random order —

Touch “RAND” for longer than a second while the disc is playing. “D.RAND” appears on the screen. The system selects a track on all the audio discs in the changer in random order. To cancel it, touch “RAND” once again.

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 letters can be displayed.

### (f) Playing a MP3/WMA disc



Touch “CD” tab, then touch “Change Discs”. Choose an MP3/WMA disc number to display this screen.

**SELECTING A DESIRED FOLDER**

**“Folder▲”:** Touch this button to go to the next folder.

**“Folder▼”:** Touch this button to go to the previous folder.

**“Select” for Folder:** The desired folder can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

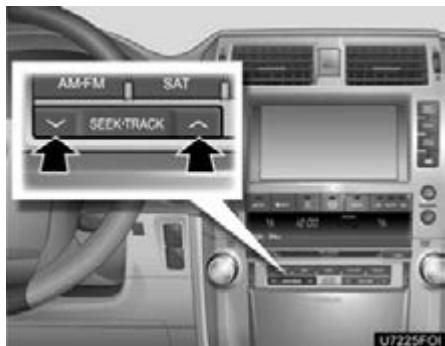
Touch “Select”. The folder list is displayed.



Touch the desired folder number. The changer will start playing the first file of the selected folder.

: By touching this button, the list moves up by 5 folder groups. If this button is touched when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By touching this button, the list moves down by 5 folder groups. If this button is touched when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

**SELECTING A DESIRED FILE**

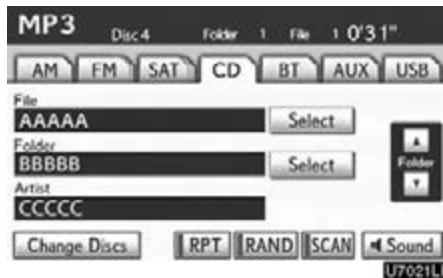
**“SEEK-TRACK” button:** Use for direct access to a desired file.

Push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK” and repeat it until the desired file number appears on the display. As you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected file from the beginning. When “RAND” or “FLD.RPT” is on, the file number within the folder you are currently listening to appears.

**Fast forward:** Push the “ $\wedge$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK” and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing from that position.

**Reverse:** Push the “ $\vee$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK” and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the changer will resume playing.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

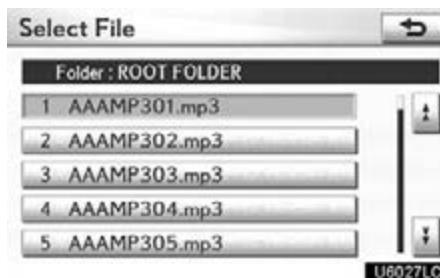


**“TUNE/FILE” knob:** Use for direct access to a desired file in the disc.

Turn the “TUNE/FILE” knob to step up or down all the files in the disc you are currently listening to. The file number appears on the display. When “RAND” or “FLD.RPT” is on, all the files in the folder you are currently listening to can be stepped up or down.

**“Select” for File:** The desired file can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Touch “Select”. The file list is displayed.

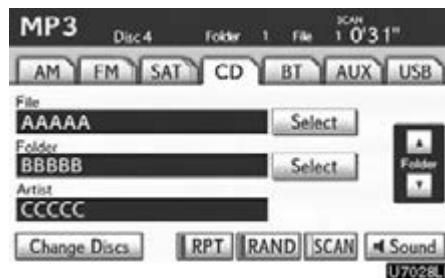


Touch the desired file number. The changer will start playing the selected file from the beginning.

: By touching this button, the list moves up by 5 file groups. If this button is touched when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By touching this button, the list moves down by 5 file groups. If this button is touched when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

#### SEARCHING FOR A DESIRED FILE



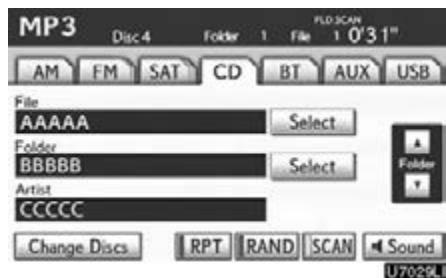
Touch "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button briefly while the disc is playing.

"SCAN" appears on the screen. The changer will play the next file in the folder for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a file, touch "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button a second time. If the changer reaches the end of the folder, it will continue scanning from file 1.

After all the files are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

### SEARCHING FOR A DESIRED FOLDER

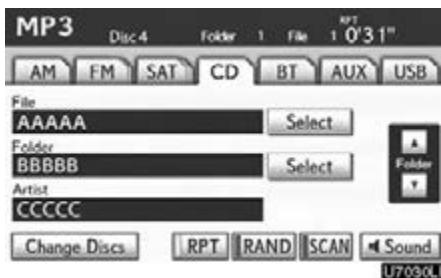


Touch "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button for longer than a second while the disc is playing.

"FLD.SCAN" appears on the screen. The program at the beginning of each folder will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, touch "SCAN" on the screen or push the "SCAN" button a second time.

After all the folders are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

### OTHER FUNCTIONS



"RPT": Use it for automatic repeat of the file or folder you are currently listening to.

#### Repeating a file —

Touch "RPT" briefly while the file is playing. "RPT" appears on the screen. When the file is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the file and play the file again. To cancel it, touch "RPT" once again.

#### Repeating a folder —

Touch "RPT" for longer than a second while the folder is playing. "FLD.RPT" appears on the screen. When the folder is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the folder and play the folder again. To cancel it, touch "RPT" once again.

**"RAND":** Use it for automatic and random selection of the folder or the disc which you are currently listening to.

**Playing the files in one folder in random order —**

Touch "RAND" briefly while the disc is playing. "RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a file in the folder you are currently listening to. To cancel it, touch "RAND" once again.

**Playing the files in all the folders on one disc in random order —**

Touch "RAND" for longer than a second while the disc is playing. "FLD.RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a file in all the folders. To cancel it, touch "RAND" once again.

When a file is skipped or the system is inoperative, touch "RAND" to reset.

**(g) If the changer malfunctions**

If "CD error" appears on the screen, audio signals of the disc cannot be read or the system has trouble. Push the "CD" button once again.

If the changer does not operate, check that the disc surface is not soiled or damaged. If the disc is O.K., the temperature of the changer's internal mechanism may be raised because of high external temperature. Remove the disc from the changer to cool it.

If the changer still does not operate, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

If an MP3/WMA disc contains CD-DA files, only CD-DA files are played. If an MP3/WMA disc contains files other than CD-DA, only MP3/WMA files are played.

## **— DVD changer operation**

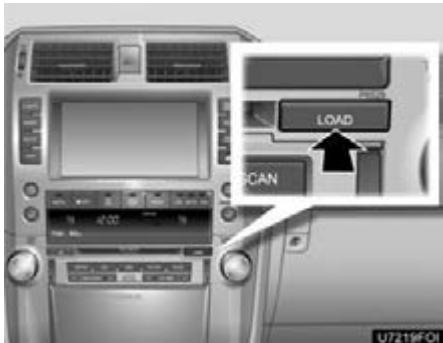
For safety reasons, you can enjoy DVD video discs, DVD audio discs and video CDs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, you can hear audio alone even in the DVD video, DVD audio or video CD mode.

### **(a) Inserting discs**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch must be in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Your DVD changer can store up to 6 discs. You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

- Setting a single disc:



1. Push the “LOAD” button briefly.

The orange indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the orange indicators change to green and stay on, the DVD changer door will open.

2. Insert only one disc while the DVD changer door is open.

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

After insertion, the set disc is automatically loaded.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, “Check disc ×” appears on the screen.

If you do not insert the disc within 15 seconds after pushing the “LOAD” button, a beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

If you need to insert the next disc, repeat the same procedure to insert another disc.

● Setting all the discs:



1. Push the “LOAD” button until you hear a beep.

The orange indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking. After the orange indicators change to green and stay on, the DVD changer door will open.



2. Insert only one disc while the DVD changer door is open.

The DVD changer door closes and the orange indicators start blinking.

3. Insert the next disc after the orange indicators change to green and stay on and the DVD changer door opens.

4. Repeat this procedure until you insert all the discs.

To cancel the operation, push the “LOAD” button briefly.

If you do not insert the discs within 15 seconds after pushing the “LOAD” button, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

**NOTICE**

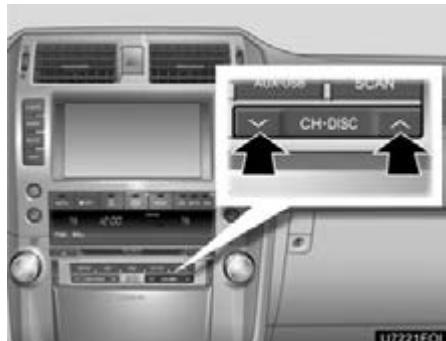
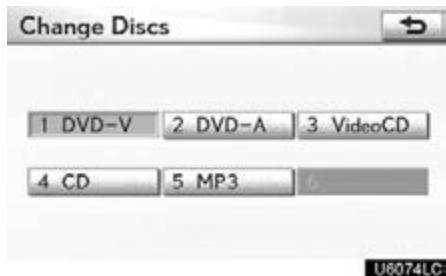
*Do not insert one disc stacked on top of another one or feed them in continuously, to prevent discs from getting stuck in the changer.*

**INFORMATION**

*Under extremely cold conditions, the display may react slowly.*

## (b) Ejecting discs

- A single disc alone:



2. Push the “▲” button for the disc briefly.

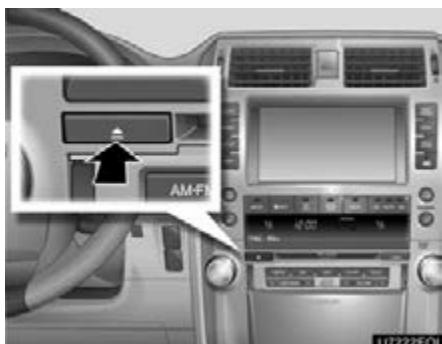
At this time, the orange indicators of the slot start blinking and the disc is ejected.

3. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.

1. Push the “^” or “v” button of “CH-DISC” or touch the disc number button on the “Change Discs” screen to highlight the disc number you want to eject.

To display the “Change Discs” screen, touch “**Change Discs**” on each audio control screen.

● **Ejecting all the discs:**



The numbers of the trays where the disc is not set are dimmed.

**1. Push the “▲” button for the disc until you hear a beep.**

At this time, the orange indicators of the slot start blinking and a disc is ejected.

**2. After the blinking indicators stay on, remove the disc.**

The indicators start blinking again and the next disc is ejected.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds after it is ejected, the beep will sound and the operation will be canceled automatically.

When all the discs are removed, the indicators go out.

(c) Playing a disc



**Push the "DISC" button, or push the "AUDIO" button to display audio screen and touch "CD/DVD" tab if the discs are already loaded in the changer.**

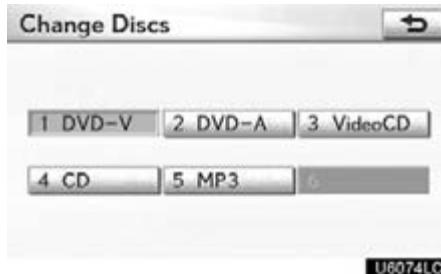
The discs set in the changer are played continuously, starting with the last disc you inserted. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track or title and chapter number and the time from the beginning of the program appear on the screen.

#### Audio CD only —

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The changer will skip any empty disc trays.

(d) Selecting a desired disc



#### On the screen:

**Touch "CD/DVD" tab, then touch "Change Discs".**

The selected disc number is highlighted.

The changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

#### On the audio panel:

**Push the "▲" or "▼" button of "CH-DISC".**

When you release the button, the changer will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

**(e) Operating a DVD disc**

**NOTE:** The playback condition of some DVD discs may be determined by a DVD software producer. This DVD changer plays a disc as the software producer intended. So some functions may not work properly. Be sure to read the instruction manual for the DVD disc separately provided. For the detailed information about DVD video discs, see “(h) DVD player and DVD video disc information” on page 243.

**Precautions on DVD video disc**

When recording with a DVD video or video CD, audio tracks may not record in some cases while the menu is displayed. As audio will not play in this case, verify that the video tracks are playing and then activate playback.

When playback of a disc is completed:

- If an audio CD or MP3 disc is playing, the first track or file starts.
- If a DVD video or video CD is playing, playback will stop or the menu screen will be displayed.

The title/chapter number and playback time display may not appear while playing back certain DVD video discs.

**CAUTION**

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. The louder sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.



This screen appears when the video screen is first displayed after “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.



Touch “CD/DVD” tab to display this screen.

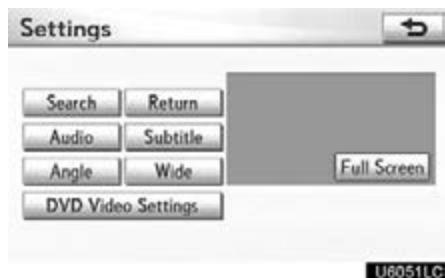
Touch “Settings” on “DVD” screen, then touch “Wide” on “Settings” screen. The screen mode can be changed.

If you touch “Full Screen” when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### DVD SETTINGS



► DVD video



► DVD audio

### DESCRIPTION OF DVD VIDEO SETTINGS

**"DVD Video Settings"**: The initial set up screen appears. (See page 235.)

**"Search"**: The title search screen appears. (See page 231.)

**"Return"**: Touching this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

**"Audio"**: The audio changing screen appears. (See page 234.)

**"Subtitle"**: The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 233.)

**"Angle"**: The angle selection screen appears. (See page 235.)

**"Wide"**: The screen mode screen appears. (See page 194.)

If you touch **"Settings"** on "DVD" screen, "Settings" screen appears.

### DESCRIPTION OF DVD AUDIO SETTINGS

**“DVD Audio Settings”:** The initial set up screen appears. (See page 235.)

**“Search”:** The group search screen appears. (See page 232.)

**“Return”:** Touching this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

**“Audio”:** The audio changing screen appears. (See page 234.)

**“Subtitle”:** The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 233.)

**“Angle”:** The angle selection screen appears. (See page 235.)

**“Wide”:** The screen mode screen appears. (See page 194.)

**“Prev. Page”:** Touch this button to reverse the pages. (See page 233.)

**“Next Page”:** Touch this button to forward the pages. (See page 233.)

**“Select Number”:** The track or number search screen appears. (See page 242.)

**“RPT”:** Touch this button to repeat a track.

**“RAND”:** Touch this button to play the track in one group in random order.

**“SCAN”:** Touch this button to play the next track in the group for 10 seconds, then scan again.

### DISPLAYING DVD CONTROLS



#### ► DVD video



#### ► DVD audio

If you touch while watching video, DVD controls will appear.

If “” appears on the screen when you touch a control, the operation relevant to the control is not permitted.

**DESCRIPTION OF DVD VIDEO CONTROLS**

**“Menu” and “Top Menu”:** If you touch any of the above controls, the menu screen for DVD video appears. (For the operation, see the manual that come with the DVD video disc provided separately.)

-  : The menu control key appears on the screen. (See page 231.)
-  : Touching this will pause the video screen.
-  : Touching this will fast reverse during playback.
-  : Touching this will stop the video screen.
-  : Touching this will resume normal play during pause.
-  : Touching this will fast forward during playback and forward frame by frame during pause.

**DESCRIPTION OF DVD AUDIO CONTROLS**

**“Top Menu”:** If you touch this button, the menu screen for DVD audio appears. (For the operation, see the manual that come with the DVD audio disc provided separately.)

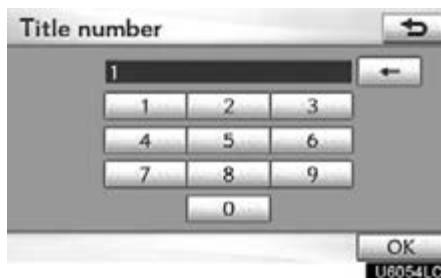
-  : The menu control key appears on the screen. (See page 231.)
-  : Touching this will pause the disc.
-  : Touching this will fast reverse during playback.
-  : Touching this will stop the disc.
-  : Touching this will resume normal play during pause.
-  : Touching this will fast forward during playback and forward frame by frame during pause.

**SELECTING A MENU ITEM**

Enter the menu item using , , or , and touch "Enter". The player starts playing disc for that menu item. Menu items can also be touched using the pointer. (For details, see the manual that comes with the DVD disc provided separately.)

When you touch the any point on the screen, the controls will disappear. To display them again, touch the any point on the screen.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

**SEARCHING BY TITLE**

DVD video only —

Enter the title number and touch "OK". The player starts playing video for that title number.

When you push the "▲" or "▼" button of "SEEK-TRACK", you can select a chapter.

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch to delete the numbers.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

**SEARCHING BY GROUP**



DVD audio only —

**Enter the group number and touch “OK”. The player starts playing the disc for that group number.**

When you push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK”, you can select a track.

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch to delete the numbers.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

**SELECTING THE BONUS GROUP**

DVD audio only —

**Enter the bonus group number on the searching group screen and touch “OK”.**

The “Key Code” screen will appear. To enter the number of the group you want to play, touch the group number.

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch to delete the numbers.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

**Touch “OK” on the screen.**

The player starts playing the disc from the selected bonus group number.

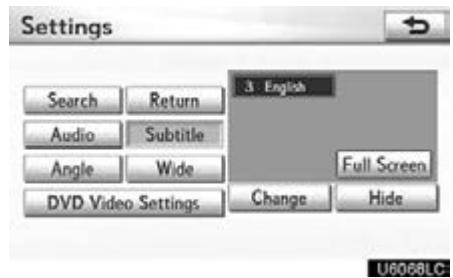
**CHANGING THE PAGE**



DVD audio only —

Touch "Prev. Page" or "Next Page" on the screen to forward or reverse the pages.

**CHANGING THE SUBTITLE LANGUAGE**



Each time you touch "Change", the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

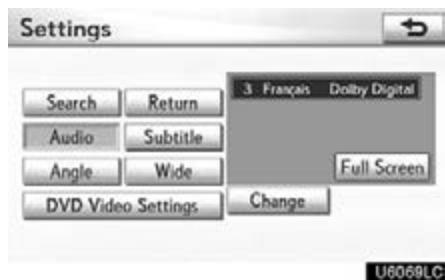
When you touch "Hide", the subtitle can be hidden.

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### CHANGING THE AUDIO LANGUAGE



DVD video only —

**Each time you touch “Change”, the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.**

When you touch , the previous screen returns.

### CHANGING THE AUDIO FORMAT



DVD audio only —

**Each time you touch “Audio”, another audio format stored on the disc is selected.**

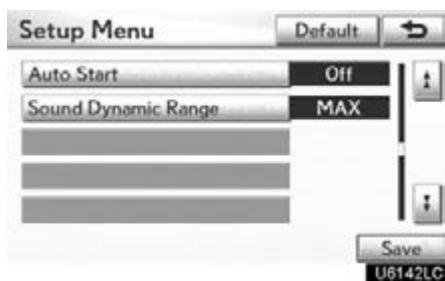
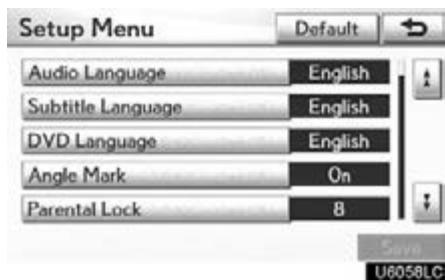
When you touch , the previous screen returns.

**CHANGING THE ANGLE**

**The angle can be selected for discs that are multi-angle compatible when the angle mark appears on the screen.**

**Each time you touch "Change", the angle is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.**

When you touch , and the previous screen returns.

**SETUP MENU**

**There are initial setting buttons on the "Setup Menu" screen.**

After you change the initial setting, touch  . The initial setting screen will be turned off and return to the picture previously.

When "Default" is touched, all menus are initialized.

**The initial setting can be changed.**

- **Audio language (DVD video only)**

You can change the audio language.

1. Touch “Audio Language”.
2. Touch the language you want to hear on the “Audio Language” screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to hear on this screen, touch “Other” and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following “ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE”.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, touch .

- **Subtitle language**

You can change the subtitle language.

1. Touch “Subtitle Language”.
2. Touch a language you want to read on the “Subtitle Language” screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, touch “Other” and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following “ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE”.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, touch .

- **DVD language**

You can change the language on the DVD video menu.

1. Touch “DVD Language”.
2. Touch the language you want to read on the “DVD Language” screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, touch “Other” and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following “ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE”.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, touch .

- **Angle mark**

The multi-angle mark can be turned on or off on the screen while the disc which is multi-angle compatible is being played.

1. Touch “Angle Mark”.

2. Touch “On” or “Off”.

- **Parental lock (DVD video only)**

The level of viewer restrictions can be changed.

1. Touch “Parental Lock”.

2. Enter the 4-digit personal code on the “Key code” screen.

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch  to delete the numbers.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, touch .

3. Touch a parental level (1 — 8) on the “Select Restriction Level”. Touch  to return to the “Setup Menu” screen.

- **Auto start**

Discs that are inserted while the vehicle is in motion will automatically start playing. Certain discs may not play.

1. Touch “Auto Start”.

2. Touch “On” or “Off”.

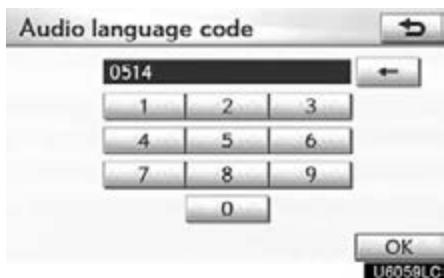
- **Sound dynamic range (DVD video only)**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

1. Touch “Sound Dynamic Range”.

2. Touch “MAX”, “STD” or “MIN”.

## ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE



If you touch "Other" on the "Audio Language" screen, "Subtitle Language" screen or "DVD Language" screen, you can select the language you want to hear or read by entering a language code.

**1. Enter the 4-digit language code.**

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch



to delete the numbers.

**2. Touch "OK".**

Code	Language
0514	English
1001	Japanese
0618	French
0405	German
0920	Italian
0519	Spanish
2608	Chinese
1412	Dutch
1620	Portuguese
1922	Swedish
1821	Russian
1115	Korean
0512	Greek
0101	Afar
0102	Abkhazian

0106	Afrikaans
0113	Amharic
0118	Arabic
0119	Assamese
0125	Aymara
0126	Azerbaijani
0201	Bashkir
0205	Byelorussian
0207	Bulgarian
0208	Bihari
0209	Bislama
0214	Bengali
0215	Tibetan
0218	Breton
0301	Catalan
0315	Corsican
0319	Czach
0325	Welsh
0401	Danish
0426	Bhutani
0515	Esperanto
0520	Estonian
0521	Basque
0601	Persian
0609	Finnish
0610	Fiji
0615	Faroese
0625	Frisian
0701	Irish
0704	Scots-Gaelic
0712	Galician
0714	Guarani

**AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM**

---

0721	Gujarati
0801	Hausa
0809	Hindi
0818	Croatian
0821	Hungarian
0825	Armenian
0901	Interlingua
0905	Interlingue
0911	Inupiak
0914	Indonesian
0919	Icelandic
0923	Hebrew
1009	Yiddish
1023	Javanese
1101	Georgian
1111	Kazakh
1112	Greenlandic
1113	Cambodian
1114	Kannada
1119	Kashmiri
1121	Kurdish
1125	Kirghiz
1201	Latin
1214	Lingala
1215	Laothian
1220	Lithuanian
1222	Latvian
1307	Malagasy
1309	Maori
1311	Macedonian
1312	Malayalam
1314	Mongolian

1315	Moldavian
1318	Marathi
1319	Malay
1320	Maltese
1325	Burmese
1401	Nauru
1405	Nepali
1415	Norwegian
1503	Occitan
1513	(Afan)Oromo
1518	Oriya
1601	Punjabi
1612	Polish
1619	Pashto, Pushto
1721	Quechua
1813	Rhaeto-Romance
1814	Kirundi
1815	Romanian
1823	Kinyarwanda
1901	Sanskrit
1904	Sindhi
1907	Sangho
1908	Serbo-Croatian
1909	Sinhalese
1911	Slovak
1912	Slovenian
1913	Samoan
1914	Shona
1915	Somali
1917	Albanian
1918	Serbian
1919	Siswati

1920	Sesotho
1921	Sundanese
1923	Swahili
2001	Tamil
2005	Telugu
2007	Tajik
2008	Thai
2009	Tigrinya
2011	Turkmen
2012	Tagalog
2014	Setswana
2015	Tonga
2018	Turkish
2019	Tsonga
2020	Tatar
2023	Twi
2111	Ukrainian
2118	Urdu
2126	Uzbek
2209	Vietnamese
2215	Volapük
2315	Wolof
2408	Xhosa
2515	Yoruba
2621	Zulu

#### SETUP OPERATION FROM THE REAR SEAT



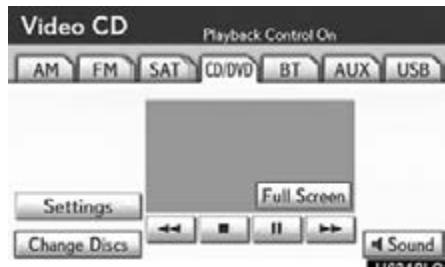
This screen appears when a rear passenger selects the setup menu. If you want to cancel the setup operation from the rear seat, select “Play”. The player will resume normal play. Under the same condition, the rear passenger can cancel the setup operation from the front seat. To lock the operation of the player from the rear seat, see “● Rear system lock” on page 332.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### (f) Operating a video CD

#### PLAYING A VIDEO CD

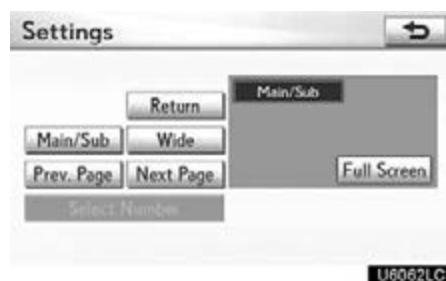


Touch “CD/DVD” tab to display this screen.

When you touch “Wide” on “Settings” screen, the screen mode can be changed.

If you touch “Full Screen” when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns.

### DISPLAYING VIDEO CD SETTINGS



If you touch “Settings” on “Video CD” screen, “Settings” screen appears.

**DESCRIPTION OF VIDEO CD SETTINGS**

● **Controls on top page**

“**Select Number**”: The track or number search screen appears. (See “SEARCHING BY TRACK” on page 242.)

“**Prev. Page**”: When you touch this while the disc menu is displayed, the previous page appears on the screen. If you touch this while the player is playing video, the previous track is searched and played.

“**Next Page**”: When you touch this while the disc menu is displayed, the next page appears on the display. If you touch this while the player is playing video, the next track is searched and played.

“**Main/Sub**”: A multiplex transmission changing control. The mode changes from Main/Sub to Main, to Sub and back to Main/Sub by touching this control.

“**Return**”: Touching this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

“**Wide**”: The screen mode screen appears.

**DISPLAYING VIDEO CD CONTROLS**

If you touch the part where controls are not located while you are watching video on the video CD, video CD controls will appear.

If “” appears on the display when you touch a control, the operation is not permitted.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### DESCRIPTION OF VIDEO CD CONTROLS

- [II] : Use this to pause the video screen.
- [◀◀] : Touch this to fast reverse during playback.
- [■] : Touch this to stop the disc.
- [▶] : Touch this to resume playing during pause.
- [▶▶] : Touch this to fast forward during the playback and start playing frame by frame during pause.



Enter the track numbers and touch "OK". The player starts playing video for that title number.

You can select a track number by pushing the "▲" or "▼" button of "SEEK-TRACK".

If you enter the wrong numbers, touch [←] to delete the numbers.

Touch [→], and the previous screen returns.

**(g) If the changer malfunctions**

If the changer or another unit equipped with the changer malfunction, your audio/video system will display following messages.

**If "Check disc ×" appears on the display:** It indicates that the disc dirty, damaged, or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly. If a disc which is not playable is inserted, "Check disc ×" will also appear on the screen. For appropriate discs for this changer, see "Audio/video system operating hints" on page 287.

**If "Region code error" appears on the display:** It indicates that the DVD region code is not set properly.

**If "DVD error" appears on the display:** It indicates that the inside of the player unit may be too hot due to the very high ambient temperature. Remove the disc from the player and allow the player to cool down.

**If the malfunction is not rectified:** Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

If an MP3 disc contains CD-DA files, only CD-DA files are played. If an MP3 disc contains files other than CD-DA, only MP3 files are played.

**(h) DVD player and DVD video disc information**

**DVD VIDEO DISCS**

This DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats. The DVD video disc conforming to another formats such as PAL or SECAM cannot be used.

**Region codes:** Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating a country where you can use the DVD video disc on this DVD player. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as "ALL" or "1", you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, "Region code error" appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, there is a case that you cannot use it.

**Marks shown on DVD video discs:**

<b>NTSC</b>	Indicates NTSC format of color TV.
	Indicates the number of audio tracks.
	Indicates the number of language subtitles.
	Indicates the number of angles.
	Indicates the screen to be selected. Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates a region code by which this video disc can be played. ALL: in all countries Number: region code

**DVD VIDEO DISC GLOSSARY**

**DVD video discs:** Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted "MPEG2", one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby Digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

**Viewer restrictions:** This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with a level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

Level 2 – 7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movie can be played.

Level 8: All types of the DVD video discs can be played.

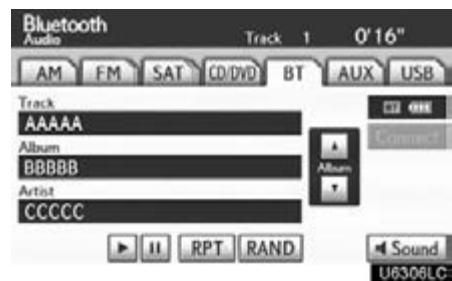
**Multi-angle feature:** You can enjoy the same scene at different angles.

**Multi-language feature:** You can select a language of the subtitle and audio.

**Region codes:** The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. For region codes, see page 243.

## — Bluetooth® audio operation

**The Bluetooth® audio system enables users to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speaker via wireless communication.**



This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.

**Audio:** This DVD player can play liner PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVD. Other decoded type cannot be played.

**Title and chapter:** Video and audio programs stored in DVD video disc are divided in parts by title and chapter.

**Title:** The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one piece of movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

**Chapter:** The unit smaller than that of title. A title comprises plural chapters.

**Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.** "Dolby", "Pro Logic", and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

"DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

**Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #’s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending.** DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

**INFORMATION**

*Portable players must correspond to the following specifications in order to be connected to the Bluetooth® audio system. However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.*

- **Bluetooth® Specification**  
Ver.1.1 or higher  
(Recommended: Ver. 2.0+EDR or higher)
- **Profile**
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver.1.0 or higher
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver.1.0 or higher  
(Recommended: Ver.1.3 or higher)

*Please go to “<http://www.lexus.com/>” to find approved Bluetooth® phones for this system.*



Bluetooth is a trademark owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

**CAUTION**

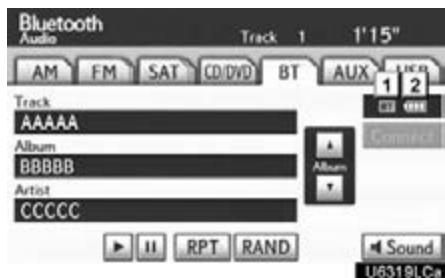
**Do not operate the player's controls or connect to the Bluetooth® audio system while driving.**

**NOTICE**

*Do not leave your portable player in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.*

**INFORMATION**

- *In the following conditions, the system may not function.*
  - *The portable player is turned off.*
  - *The portable player is not connected.*
  - *The portable player has a low battery.*
- *It may take time, the phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio play.*



**[1] Indicates the condition of the Bluetooth® connection.**

“Blue” indicates an excellent connection to Bluetooth®.

“Yellow” indicates a bad connection to Bluetooth®, resulting in possible deterioration of audio quality.

**[BT]** : No connection to Bluetooth®.

**[2] Indicates the amount of battery charge left.**

An antenna for the Bluetooth® connection is built in to the instrument panel. The indication of the Bluetooth® connection may turn yellow and the system may not function when you use the Bluetooth® portable player in the following conditions.

- Your portable player is hiding behind from the display (behind the seat or in the glove box or console box).
- Your portable player touches or is covered with metal materials.

Leave the Bluetooth® portable player in a place where the “Blue” indication is displayed.

The portable player information is registered when the Bluetooth® audio system is connected. When you release possession of your vehicle, remove your portable player. (See “(a) Removing a Bluetooth® audio” on page 392.)



**Empty** ← → **Full**

Remaining charge is not displayed while the Bluetooth® is connecting.

The amount left does not always correspond with the one of your portable player.

This system doesn't have a charging function.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

FCC ID : AJDK021  
IC ID: 775E-K021

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen and RSS-210 of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions : (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### CAUTION

**FCC WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**CAUTION: Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure**

This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 20 cm and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

**Co-location:** This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

(a) **Connecting Bluetooth® audio player**

To use the Bluetooth® audio system, you need to enter your portable player into the system. Once you have registered it, you can enjoy your music on the vehicle's audio system. (See “—Setting Bluetooth® audio” on page 390.)

For the operation procedure for the portable player, see the instruction manual that comes with it.

- When the connection method is “From Vehicle”.
  - When the portable player is standby for the connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.
- When the auto connection is on
  - Manually connect the portable player in accordance with the following procedure.



Touch "Connect".



When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed. Now you can use the portable player.



This screen will appear when the connection has failed.

- When the connection method is "From Portable Player"

Operate the portable player and connect it to the Bluetooth® audio system. For the operation procedure for the portable player, see the instruction manual that comes with it.



Touch "Connect".



Connect the portable audio player to the Bluetooth® audio system.



This screen will appear when the connection has been successfully established.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

- **Reconnecting the portable player**

If the portable player is disconnected with a poor reception from the Bluetooth® network when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable player.

If the Bluetooth® is disconnected on purpose such as you turned your portable player off, this does not happen.

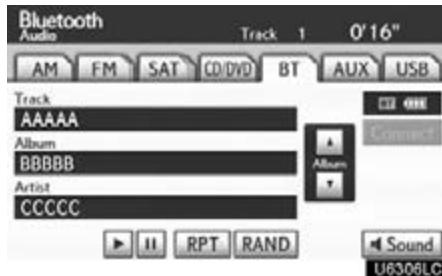
Reconnect it by the following method.

- **Select the portable player again.**

- **Enter the portable player.**

- (b) **Playing a Bluetooth® audio**

- **Playing and pausing a Bluetooth® audio**



Touch "BT" tab if the Bluetooth® audio player is already connected.

Touch and the music will start playing.

Touch and the music will pause.

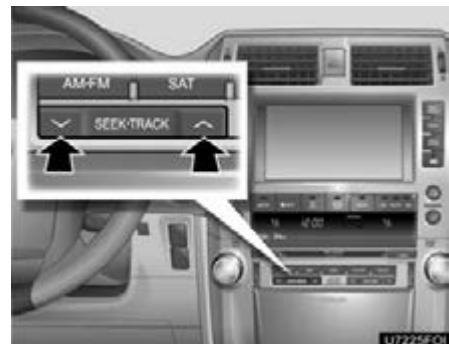
Touch and the music will start playing again.

Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, the music may start playing when touching while it is paused. On the other hand, the music may pause when touching while it is playing.



Some titles may not be displayed depending on the type of portable player.

#### ● Selecting a desired track



**“SEEK-TRACK” button:** Use for direct access to a desired track.

Push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK” and repeat it until the desired track number appears on the screen. As you release the button, the portable player will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

#### Fast forward:

Push and hold the “ $\wedge$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK” to fast forward the player. When you release the button, the portable player will resume playing from that position.

#### Reverse:

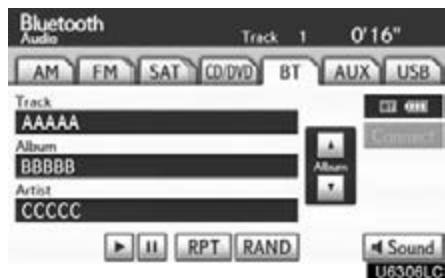
Push and hold the “ $\vee$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK” to reverse the player. When you release the button, the player will resume playing.

#### INFORMATION

*Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.*

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

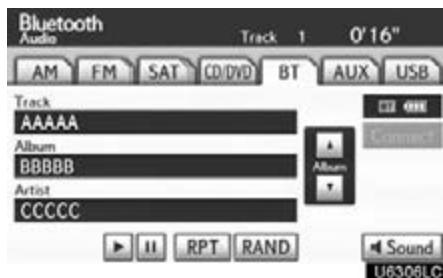
### ● Selecting a desired album



“Album ▲”: Touch this button to go to the next album.

“Album ▼”: Touch this button to go to the previous album.

### ● Other function



“RPT”: Use this control to automatic replay the track you are currently listening to.

Repeating a track —

While the track is playing, touch “RPT” briefly.

“RPT” appears on the screen. When the track is finished, the player will automatically play it again. To cancel the repeat, touch “RPT” once again.

### INFORMATION

*Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.*

## — USB memory/ iPod operation

“RAND”: Use this for automatic and random selection of tracks on the album that you are currently listening to.

**Playing the tracks in the album in random order —**

**While the track is playing, touch “RAND” briefly.**

“RAND” appears on the screen. The system selects a track in the album you are currently listening to. To cancel this function, touch “RAND” once again.

### INFORMATION

*Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.*

Connecting a USB memory or iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

### ! CAUTION

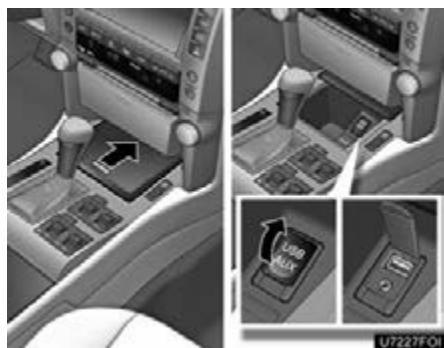
**Do not operate the player's controls or connect the USB memory or iPod while driving.**

### NOTICE

- *Do not leave your portable player in the car. In particular, high temperatures inside the vehicle may damage the portable player.*
- *Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable player while it is connected as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.*
- *Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable player or its terminal.*

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

### (a) Connecting a USB memory or iPod

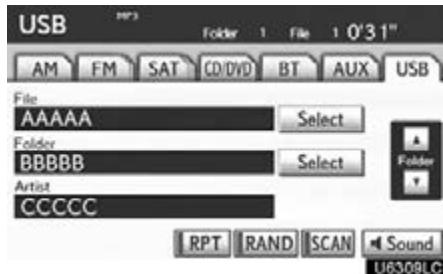


Open the cover and connect a USB memory or iPod using an iPod cable.

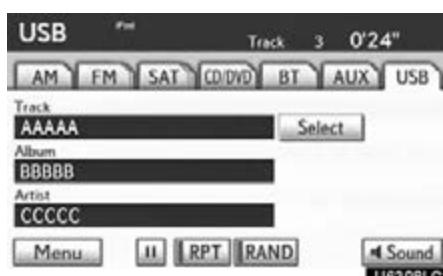
Turn on the power of the USB memory or iPod if it is not turned on.

### (b) Playing a USB memory or iPod

#### ● Playing and pausing a file or track



#### ► USB memory



#### ► iPod

Push the “AUX-USB” button or push the “AUDIO” button to display this screen and touch the “USB” tab to display this screen if the USB memory or iPod are already connected.

Touch and the music will start playing.

Touch and the music will pause.

Touch and the music will start playing again.

### INFORMATION

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- When the USB memory is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB memory will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB memory will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod or USB memory that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.

● Selecting a play mode (iPod only)



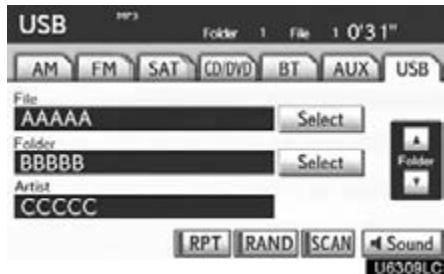
1. Touch "Menu".



2. Touch the desired play mode.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

- Selecting a desired folder (USB memory only)



Touch the desired folder number. The system will start playing the first file of the selected folder.

: By touching this button, the list moves up by 5 folder groups. If this button is touched when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By touching this button, the list moves down by 5 folder groups. If this button is touched when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

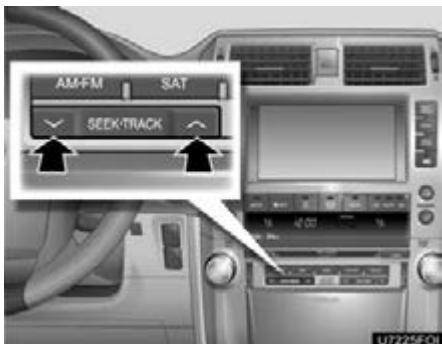
“**Folder▲**”: Touch this button to go to the next folder.

“**Folder▼**”: Touch this button to go to the previous folder.

“**Select**” for **Folder**: The desired folder can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Touch “**Select**”. The folder list is displayed.

- Selecting a desired file or track



**“SEEK-TRACK” button:** Use for direct access to a desired file or track.

Push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK” and repeat it until the desired file or track appears on the screen. As you release the button, the USB memory or iPod will start playing the selected file or track from the beginning.

**Fast forward:**

Push and hold the “ $\wedge$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK” to fast forward the player. When you release the button, the player will resume playing from that position.

**Reverse:**

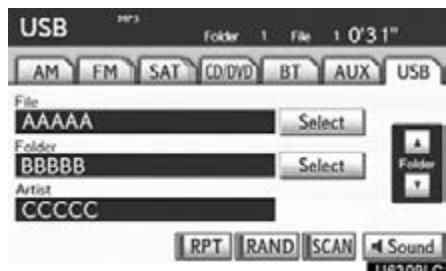
Push and hold the “ $\vee$ ” button of “SEEK-TRACK” to reverse the player. When you release the button, the player will resume playing.



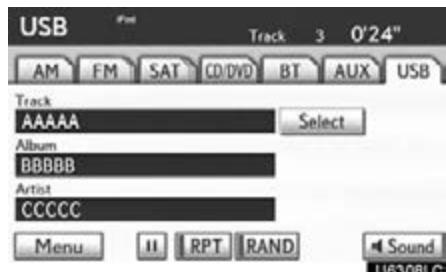
**“TUNE/FILE” knob:** Use for direct access to a desired file or track in the player.

Turn the “TUNE/FILE” knob to step up or down all the files or tracks in the player you are currently listening to.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM



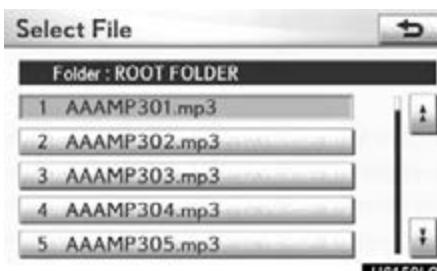
### ► USB memory



### ► iPod

**“Select” for File or Track:** The desired file or track can be selected in a list. This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Touch “Select”. The file or track list is displayed.

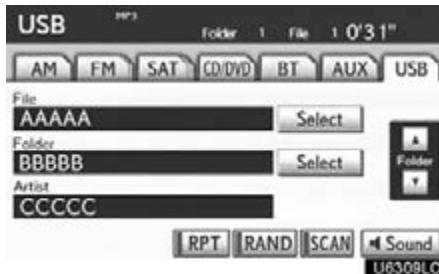


Touch the desired file or track number. The changer will start playing the selected file or track from the beginning.

: By touching this button, the list moves up by 5 file or track groups. If this button is touched when the top page of the list is displayed, the last page is displayed.

: By touching this button, the list moves down by 5 file or track groups. If this button is touched when the last page of the list is displayed, the top page is displayed.

- Searching for a desired file (USB memory only)

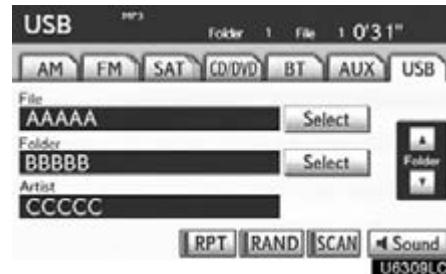


**Touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button briefly while the music is playing.**

“SCAN” appears on the screen. The player will play the next file for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a file, touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button a second time. If the player reaches the end of the memory, it will continue scanning at file1.

After all the files are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

- Searching for a desired folder (USB memory only)



**Touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button for longer than a second while the music is playing.**

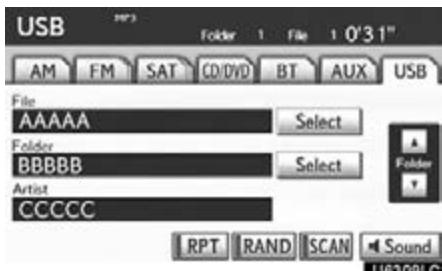
“FLD.SCAN” appears on the screen. The program at the beginning of each folder will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, touch “SCAN” on the screen or push the “SCAN” button a second time.

After all the folders are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

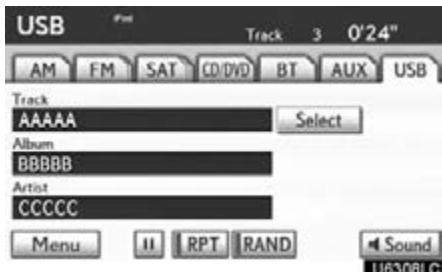
## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### ● Other function



### ► USB memory



### ► iPod

**"RPT":** Use this control to automatic replay the file or track you are currently listening to.

#### Repeating a file or track —

**While the file or track is playing, touch "RPT" briefly.**

"RPT" appears on the screen. When the file or track is finished, the player will automatically play it again. To cancel the repeat, touch "RPT" once again.

#### Repeating a folder (USB memory only) —

**While the folder is playing, touch "RPT" for longer than a second.**

"FLD.RPT" appears on the screen. When the folder is finished, the changer will automatically go back to the beginning of the folder and play the folder again. To cancel it, touch "RPT" once again.

**"RAND":** Use this for automatic and random selection of files or tracks on the album that you are currently listening to.

#### Playing the file or track in random order —

**While the file or track is playing, touch "RAND" briefly.**

"RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a file or track you are currently listening to. To cancel this function, touch "RAND" once again.

#### Playing the files in all files in random order —

Touch "RAND" for longer than a second while the music is playing. "FLD.RAND" appears on the screen. The system selects a file in all files. To cancel it, touch "RAND" once again.

When a file is skipped or the system is inoperative, touch "RAND" to reset.

## Audio/video remote controls (steering switches)



Some parts of the audio system can be adjusted using the switches on the steering wheel.

Details of the specific switches, controls, and features are described below.

- 1** Volume control switch
- 2** “ $\wedge \vee$ ” switch
- 3** “MODE” switch

### **1** Volume control switch

Push “+” side to increase the volume. The volume continues to increase while the switch is being pressed.

Push “-” side to decrease the volume. The volume continues to decrease while the switch is being pressed.

### **2** “ $\wedge \vee$ ” switch

#### Radio

This switch has the following features —

To select a preset station:

Quickly push and release the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” side of the switch. Do this again to select the next preset station.

To seek a station:

Push and hold the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” side of the switch until you hear a beep. Do this again to find the next station. If you push the switch on either side during the seek mode, seeking will be cancelled.

To step up or down the frequency, push and hold the switch even after you hear a beep. When you release from the switch, the radio will begin seeking up or down for a station. Do this again to find the next station.

XM® Satellite Radio (if equipped) —

To select a preset channel, push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” side of the switch. Repeat until a desired channel is found.

#### CD changer or DVD changer

Use this switch to skip up or down to a different track, file or chapter in either direction.

To select a desired track, file or chapter: Quickly push and release the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” side of the switch until the track, file or chapter you want to play is set. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, file or chapter, push the “ $\vee$ ” side of the switch once, quickly.

To select a desired disc:

Push and hold the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” switch until you hear a beep to change to the next or the previous disc. Repeat this operation until you reach the disc you want to listen to.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### **Bluetooth® audio player**

Use this switch to skip up or down to a different track or album in either direction.

To select a desired track:

Quickly push and release the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” side of the switch until the track you want to listen to is set. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, push the “ $\vee$ ” side of the switch once quickly.

To select a desired album:

Push and hold “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” switch until you hear a beep to change to the next or the previous album. Repeat this operation until you reach the album you want to listen to.

### **USB memory/iPod**

Use this switch to skip up or down to a different file or track in either direction.

To select a desired file or track:

Push the “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” side of the switch until the file or track you want to listen to is set. If you want to return to the beginning of the current file or track, push the “ $\vee$ ” side of the switch once quickly.

To select a desired folder (USB memory only):

Push and hold “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” switch until you hear a beep to change to the next or the previous folder. Repeat this operation until you reach the folder you want to listen to.

### **[3] “MODE” switch**

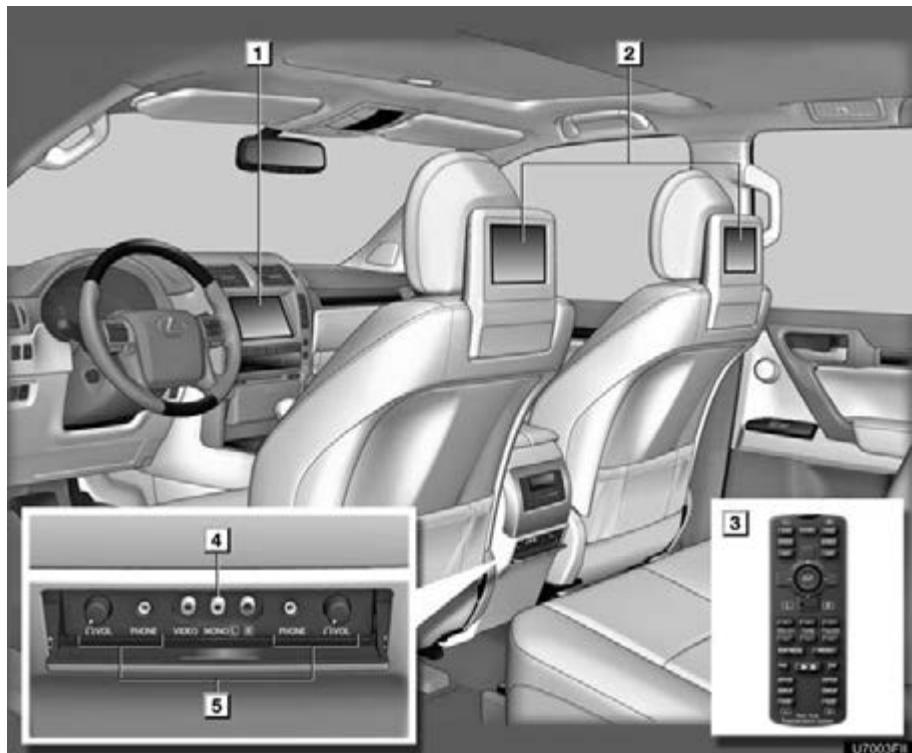
Push “**MODE**” switch to select an audio mode. Each push changes the mode sequentially if the desired mode is ready to use.

To turn the audio/video system on, push the “**MODE**” switch.

To turn the audio/video system off, push and hold the “**MODE**” switch until you hear a beep.

**Rear seat entertainment system features (if equipped) —**

The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video.



- 1** Front audio system
- 2** Displays
- 3** Rear seat entertainment system controller
- 4** A/V input port
- 5** Headphone volume control dials and headphone jacks

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

The rear seat entertainment system can be used when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

- **Displays**



A display is installed in the back of each front seat. When audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input port, rear passengers can enjoy different audio sources on each display. See "—Using the video mode" on page 284.

- **Rear seat entertainment system controller**

Use the controller to operate both the left and right side displays. Some controller buttons are shared between the left and right side displays. When operating those buttons, first select the desired display using the select display switch.

To operate, aim the controller at the desired display.



- [1] Controller buttons for the left side display
- [2] Controller buttons for the right side display
- [3] Turns display off
- [4] Selects the display to be operated (for some controller buttons only)

- Before using the controller (for new vehicle owners)



An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being discharged. Remove the insulating sheet before using the remote control.

- Replacing the controller batteries  
Necessary item for replacing “3 AA batteries”.



**1. Remove the cover.**



**2. Remove the depleted batteries and install the new ones.**

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

If the batteries are discharged, the following symptoms may occur.

- The rear seat entertainment system controller will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

### When using 3 AA batteries

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, electric appliance shop, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

### • Headphone jacks



[1] To use the headphones, connect them to the jack.

[2] To adjust the volume

1. Push and release the lid.
2. Turn the knob clockwise to increase the volume. Turn the knob counter-clockwise to decrease the volume.

### • Headphones

With some headphones generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch signals properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

### • Volume

Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.

● Caution screen



This screen appears for a few seconds when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

● Changing the source



- [1] Turning on the audio source selection screen
- [2] Inputting the selected icon
- [3] Selecting an icon

Push "SOURCE" to display the audio source selection screen.



Select an audio source.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

- **Changing the speaker output**

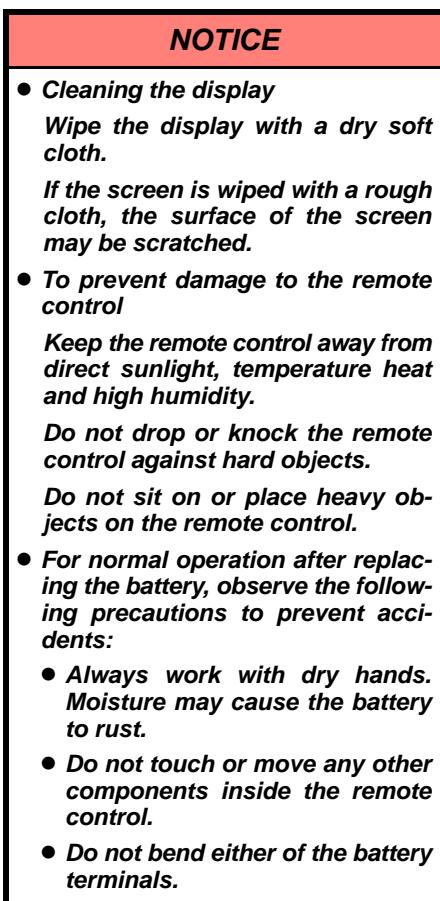


To play the rear audio over the speakers in the vehicle, turn “Speaker Output” on.

### CAUTION

- While driving
  - Do not use headphones. Doing so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- To prevent accidents and electric shock
  - Do not disassemble or modify the remote control.
- When the remote control is not used
  - Stow the remote control. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. The louder sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.
- Removed battery and other parts:
  - Keep away from children.
  - These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.

## — Using the radio



Select radio mode on the source screen to display the control screen.



[1] Selecting a preset station

[2] Tuning the station

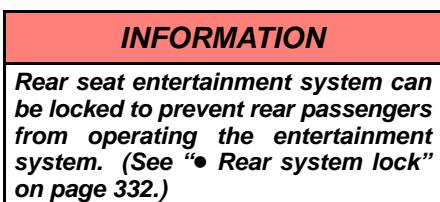
### ● Selecting a preset station

Push “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” of “DISC-CH” until the desired station band appears on the screen.

### ● Tuning the station

Push “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” of “TUNE” until the desired station appears on the screen.

Push “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” of “TUNE” and the stations will be searched automatically one after another.



## — Using the DVD changer



- [1] Turning on DVD changer mode
- [2] Selecting a disc

### ● Selecting a disc



Push “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” of “DISC-CH” until the desired disc number appears on the screen.

- Audio CD, CD text ..... 270
- MP3/WMA disc ..... 271
- DVD video/audio ..... 271
- Video CD ..... 281

## — Playing an audio CD/CD text

### ● Selecting a track



Push “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” of “TUNE” until the desired track number appears on the screen.

### ● Fast forwarding or reversing a track

Push and hold “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” of “TUNE”.

**— Playing MP3/WMA discs****● Selecting a file****[1] Selecting a file****[2] Selecting a folder**

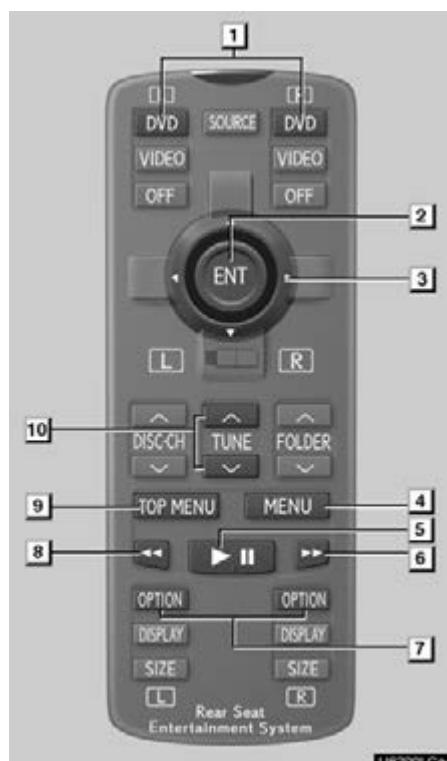
Push “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” of “TUNE” until the desired file number appears on the screen.

**● Selecting a folder**

Push “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” of “FOLDER” until the desired folder number appears on the screen.

**● Fast forwarding or reversing a file**

Push and hold “ $\wedge$ ” or “ $\vee$ ” of “TUNE”.

**— Playing DVD video/audio****● Controller**

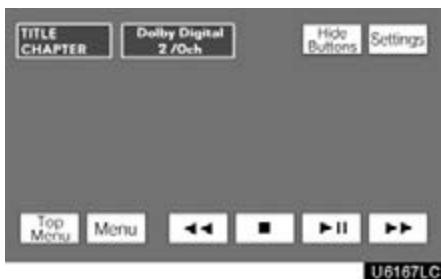
## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

- [1]** Turning on the DVD mode
- [2]** Inputting the selected icon
- [3]** Selecting an icon
- [4]** Turning on the menu screen
- [5]** Playing/pausing a disc
- [6]** Fast forwarding a disc
- [7]** Turning on the control icon screen
- [8]** Reversing a disc
- [9]** Turning on the title selection screen
- [10]** Push to select a chapter/track  
Push and hold to fast forwarding or reversing a chapter/track

### ● DVD video and DVD audio

Push “OPTION” if no icons are shown while watching a DVD video or DVD audio, and following screens appear.



### ► DVD video



### ► DVD audio

“**Settings**”: Selecting this will display setting screen.

“**Hide Buttons**”: Selecting this will turn off the icons from the screen.

If “” appears on the screen when you select a control, the operation relevant to the control is not permitted.

**DESCRIPTION OF DVD VIDEO CONTROLS**

**“Menu” and “Top Menu”:** If you select any of the above controls, the menu screen for DVD video appears. (For the operation, see the manual that come with the DVD video disc provided separately.)

-  : Selecting this will fast reverse during playback.
-  : Selecting this will stop the video screen.
-  : Selecting this will pause/resume the video screen.
-  : Selecting this will fast forward during playback and forward frame by frame during pause.

**DESCRIPTION OF DVD AUDIO CONTROLS**

**“Top Menu”:** If you select this button, the menu screen for DVD audio appears. (For the operation, see the manual that come with the DVD audio disc provided separately.)

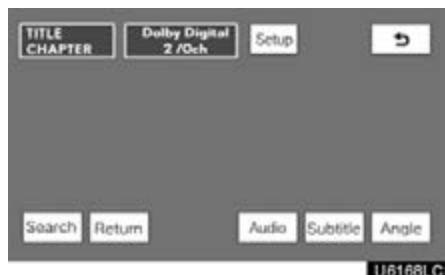
-  : Selecting this will fast reverse during playback.
-  : Selecting this will stop the disc.
-  : Selecting this will pause/resume the disc.
-  : Selecting this will fast forward during playback and forward frame by frame during pause.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### DVD SETTINGS

When “**Settings**” is selected on the control icon screens, the following screens will appear according to audio mode.



#### ► DVD video



#### ► DVD audio

### DESCRIPTION OF DVD VIDEO SETTINGS

“**Setup**”: The initial set up screen appears. (See page 279.)

“**Search**”: The title search screen appears. (See page 275.)

“**Return**”: Selecting this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

“**Audio**”: The audio changing screen appears. (See page 278.)

“**Subtitle**”: The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 277.)

“**Angle**”: The angle selection screen appears. (See page 279.)

When you select , the previous screen returns.

**DESCRIPTION OF DVD AUDIO SETTINGS**

**“Setup”:** The initial set up screen appears. (See page 279.)

**“Select Number”:** The track or number search screen appears. (See page 277.)

**“Search”:** The group search screen appears. (See page 276.)

**“Return”:** Selecting this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.

**“Prev. Page”:** Select this button to reverse the pages.

**“Next Page”:** Select this button to forward the pages.

**“Subtitle”:** The subtitle changing screen appears. (See page 277.)

**“Angle”:** The angle selection screen appears. (See page 279.)

When you select , the previous screen returns.

**SEARCHING BY TITLE**

DVD video only—

**Select “Search” on the settings screen.**

**Enter the title number and select “OK”. The player starts playing video for that title number.**

When you push “^” or “V” of “TUNE”, you can select a chapter.

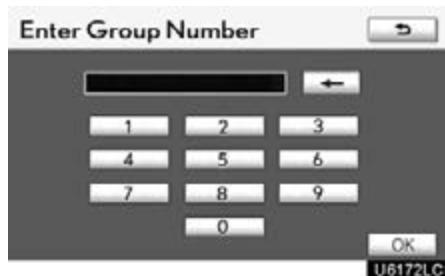
If you enter the wrong numbers, select



to delete the numbers.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

**SEARCHING BY GROUP**



DVD audio only —

**Select “Search” on the settings screen.**  
**Enter the group number and select “OK”. The player starts playing the disc for that group number.**

When you push “^” or “V” of “TUNE”, you can select a track.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select to delete the numbers.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

**SELECTING THE BONUS GROUP**



DVD audio only —

**Select “Search” on the settings screen.**  
**Enter the bonus group number on the searching group screen and select “OK”.**

The “Enter Key Code” screen will appear. To enter the number of the group you want to play, select the group number.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select to delete the numbers.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

**Select “OK” on the screen.**

The player starts playing the disc from the selected bonus group number.

**SELECTING THE MENU NUMBER**

DVD audio only —

Select “Select Number” on the settings screen.

Enter the menu number and select “OK”.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select  to delete the numbers.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

**CHANGING  
LANGUAGE**

**THE**

**SUBTITLE**



Select “Subtitle” on the settings screen.

Each time you select “Subtitle”, the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

When you select “Hide”, the subtitle can be hidden.

When you select , the previous screen returns.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### CHANGING THE AUDIO LANGUAGE



DVD video only —

**Select “Audio” on the settings screen.**

**Each time you select “Audio”, the language is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.**

When you select , the previous screen returns.

### CHANGING THE AUDIO FORMAT

DVD audio only —

**Select “Audio” on the control icon screen.**

**Each time you select “Audio”, another audio format stored on the disc is selected.**

When you select , the previous screen returns.

### CHANGING THE ANGLE

Select "Angle" on the settings screen.

The angle can be selected for discs that are multi-angle compatible when the angle mark appears on the screen.

Each time you select "Angle", the angle is selected from the ones stored in the discs and changed.

When you select , and the previous screen returns.

### SETUP MENU



Select "Setup" on the settings screen.

There are initial setting buttons on the "Setup Menu" screen.

After you change the initial setting, select "OK". The initial setting screen will be turned off and return to the picture previously.

When "Default" is selected, all menus are initialized.

**The initial setting can be changed.**

● **Audio language (DVD video only)**

You can change the audio language.

1. Select “Audio Language”.
2. Select the language you want to hear on the “Audio Language” screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to hear on this screen, select “Other” and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following “ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE”.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, select .

● **Subtitle language**

You can change the subtitle language.

1. Select “Subtitle Language”.
2. Select a language you want to read on the “Subtitle Language” screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, select “Other” and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following “ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE”.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, select .

● **DVD language**

You can change the language on the DVD video menu.

1. Select “DVD Language”.
2. Select the language you want to read on the “DVD Language” screen.

If you cannot find the language you want to read on this screen, select “Other” and enter a language code. For the entry of language code, see the following “ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE”.

To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, select .

● **Angle mark**

The multi-angle mark can be turned on or off on the screen while the disc which is multi-angle compatible is being played.

1. Select “Angle Mark”.

2. Select “ON” or “OFF”.

● **Parental lock (DVD video only)**

The level of viewer restrictions can be changed.

1. Select “Parental Lock”.

2. Enter the 4-digit personal code on the “Key code” screen.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select



To return to the “Setup Menu” screen, select .

3. Select a parental level (1 — 8) on the “Select Restriction Level”. Select  to return to the “Setup Menu” screen.

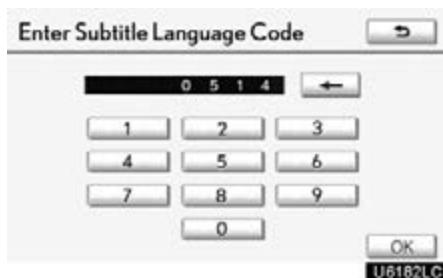
● **Sound dynamic range (DVD video only)**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

1. Select “Sound Dynamic Range”.

2. Select “MAX”, “STD” or “MIN”.

## ENTER AUDIO LANGUAGE CODE



If you select "Other" on the "Audio Language" screen, "Subtitle Language" screen or "DVD Language" screen, you can select the language you want to hear or read by entering a language code. (See page 237.)

1. Enter the 4-digit language code.

If you enter the wrong numbers, select

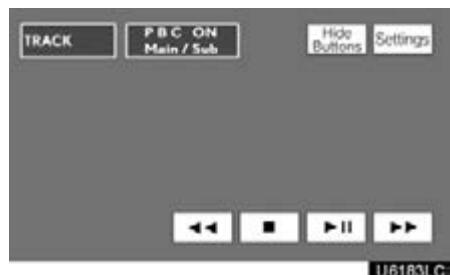


to delete the numbers.

2. Select "OK".

## ● Video CD

Push "OPTION" if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, and following screen appears.



**"Settings"**: Selecting this will display setting screen.

**"Hide Buttons"**: Selecting this will turn off the icons from the screen.

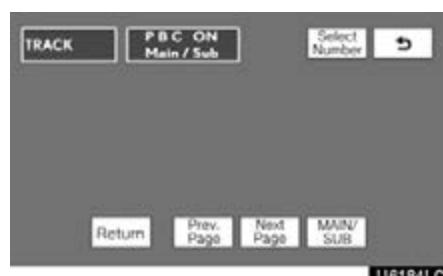
If "█" appears on the display when you select a control, the operation is not permitted.

## AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM

---

### DESCRIPTION OF VIDEO CD CONTROLS

- [◀◀] : Select this to fast reverse during playback.
- [■] : Selecting this will stop the video screen.
- [▶▶] : Use this to pause/resume the video screen.
- [▶▶] : Select this to fast forward during the playback and start playing frame by frame during pause.



U6184LC

DESCRIPTION OF VIDEO CD SETTINGS	SEARCHING BY TRACK
<b>"Select Number"</b> : The track or number search screen appears. (See "SEARCHING BY TRACK" on page 283.)	Select "Select Number" on the settings screen.
<b>"Return"</b> : Selecting this will display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.	Enter the track numbers and select "OK". The player starts playing video for that title number.
<b>"Prev. Page"</b> : When you select this while the disc menu is displayed, the previous page appears on the screen. If you select this while the player is playing video, the previous track is searched and played.	You can select a track number by pushing "▲" or "▼" of "TUNE".
<b>"Next Page"</b> : When you select this while the disc menu is displayed, the next page appears on the display. If you select this while the player is playing video, the next track is searched and played.	If you enter the wrong numbers, select  to delete the numbers.
<b>"MAIN/SUB"</b> : A multiplex transmission changing control. The mode changes from Main/Sub to Main, to Sub and back to Main/Sub by selecting this control.	Select  , and the previous screen returns.

## — Using the video mode

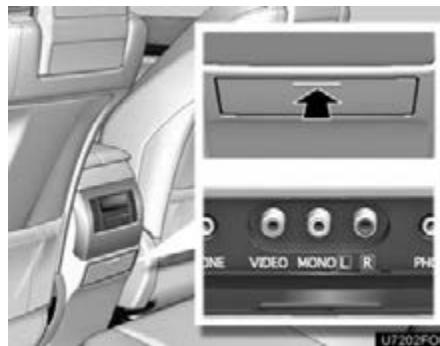


Push “VIDEO” to select the video mode.

Before switching to the video mode, connect the audio-video equipment to the A/V input port.

When “Speaker Output” is off, any audio-video source can be selected for the other rear display. See “● Changing the speaker output” on page 268.

### ● Using the port



**Push and release the lid.**

The A/V input port is composed of 3 input ports.

Yellow: Image input port

White: Left channel audio input port

Red: Right channel audio input port

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input port. For details, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

### NOTICE

*When the A/V input port is not in use, keep the A/V input port cover closed. Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or a short circuit.*

### — Changing other settings

- If the video is not correctly displayed



Push "DISPLAY".



Pushing "SIZE" changes the display modes sequentially as follows:

Normal → "Wide 1" → "Wide 2"

Select "PAL VIDEO".

If the video is not correctly displayed, turn "PAL VIDEO" on or off.

● Adjusting the screen



Push "DISPLAY".



Select the desired button to adjust color, tone, contrast and brightness. After adjusting the screen, touch "OK".

"Color" "R":

Strengthens the red color of the screen.

"Color" "G":

Strengthens the green color of the screen.

"Tone" "+":

Strengthens the tone of the screen.

"Tone" "-":

Weakens the tone of the screen.

"Contrast" "+":

Strengthens the contrast of the screen.

"Contrast" "-":

Weakens the contrast of the screen.

"Brightness" "+":

Brightens the screen.

"Brightness" "-":

Darkens the screen.

The screen goes off when "Screen Off" is selected. To turn the display screen back on, push "DVD", "VIDEO", "OFF" or "DISPLAY" for the display. The selected screen appears.

## Audio/video system operating hints

### NOTICE

- To avoid damage to the audio/video system:**
- Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio/video system.
  - Do not put anything other than an appropriate discs into the CD changer or DVD changer.

### INFORMATION

**The use of a cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio/video system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.**

#### ● Radio reception

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with your radio — it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or telephone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther you are from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as your vehicle moves.

Here are some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with your radio:

### FM

Fading and drifting stations — Generally, the effective range of FM is about 25 miles (40 km). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Multi-path — FM signals are reflective, making it possible for two signals to reach your antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Static and fluttering — These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees, or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping — If the FM signal you are listening to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, your radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

### AM

Fading — AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere — especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference — When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static — AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening, or electrical motors. This results in static.

**XM®**

Cargo loaded on the roof luggage carrier, especially metal objects, may adversely affect the reception of XM® Satellite Radio.

Alteration or modifications carried out without appropriate authorization may invalidate the user's right to operate the equipment.

**iPod****About iPod —**

- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

**Compatible models —**

Model	Generation	Software version
iPod	5th generation	Ver. 1.2.0 or higher
iPod nano	1st generation	Ver. 1.3.0 or higher
	2nd generation	Ver. 1.1.2 or higher
	3rd generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher
iPod touch	1st generation	Ver. 1.1.0 or higher
iPod classic	1st generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models listed above might be incompatible with this system.

iPod 4th generation and earlier models are not compatible with this system.

iPhone, iPod mini, iPod shuffle and iPod photo are not compatible with this system.

**USB memory**

USB memorys that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback.

- USB communication formats: USB 2.0 FS (12 MBPS)
- File formats: FAT 16/32 (Windows®)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

**CARING FOR YOUR CD CHANGER,  
DVD CHANGER AND DISCS**

- Your CD changer and DVD changer is intended for use with 4.7 in. (12 cm) discs only.
- Extremely high temperatures can keep your CD changer and DVD changer from working. On hot days, use the air conditioning to cool the vehicle interior before you use the changer and player.
- Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make your CD changer and DVD changer skip.
- If moisture gets into your CD changer and DVD changer, you may not play even though they appear to be working. Remove the discs from the changer and wait until it dries.

**CAUTION**

CD changer and DVD changer use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the changers correctly.

**CD changer**

- Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your changer.

SACD  
Copy-protected CD  
CD-ROM

**DVD changer**

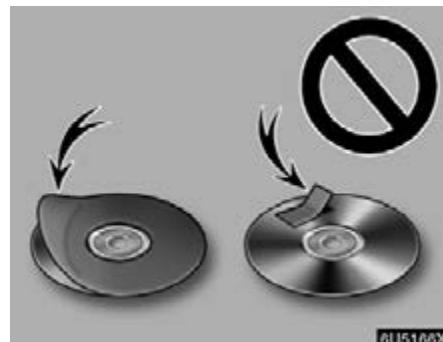
Audio CDs	
DVD video discs	
DVD audio discs	
Video CDs	

- Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your changer.

SACD  
Copy-protected CD  
CD-ROM  
DVD-R  
DVD+R  
DVD-RW  
DVD+RW  
DVD-ROM  
DVD-RAM



► Special shaped discs



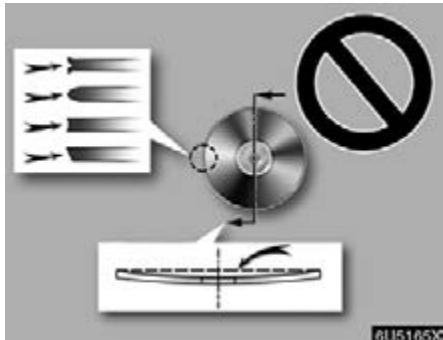
► Labeled discs



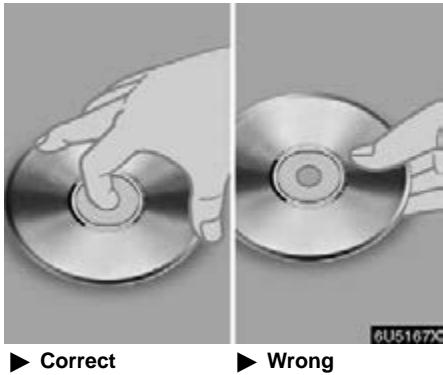
► Transparent/translucent discs

#### NOTICE

- Do not use special shaped, transparent/translucent, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations. The use of such discs may damage the player or changer, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.
- This system is not designed for use of Dual Disc. Do not use Dual Disc because it may cause damage to the changer.
- Do not use a disc with protection ring. The use of such disc may damage the changer, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.



► Low quality discs



- Handle discs carefully, especially when you are inserting them. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scratches, warping, pin holes, or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)
- Remove discs from the players when you are not using them. Store them in their plastic cases away from moisture, heat, and direct sunlight.



**To clean a disc:** Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in circles). Dry it with another soft, lint-free cloth. Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.

#### MP3/WMA FILES

- MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3) and WMA (Windows Media Audio) are audio compression standards.
- The MP3/WMA player can play MP3 and WMA files on CD-ROM, CD-R and CD-RW discs.
- The unit can play disc recordings compatible with ISO 9660 level 1, 2, (Romeo Joliet) and UDF (2.01 or lower) file system.
- When naming an MP3 or WMA file, add the appropriate file extension (.mp3 or .wma).
- The MP3/WMA player plays back files with .mp3 or .wma file extensions as MP3 or WMA files. To prevent noise and playback errors, use the appropriate file extensions.
- The MP3/WMA player can play only the first session using multi-session compatible CDs.
- MP3 player — MP3 files are compatible with the ID3 Tag Ver. 1.0, Ver. 1.1, Ver. 2.2, and Ver. 2.3 formats. The unit cannot display disc title, track title and artist name in other formats.
- USB memory — MP3 files are compatible with the ID3 Tag Ver. 1.0, Ver. 1.1, Ver. 2.2, Ver. 2.3 and Ver. 2.4 formats. The unit cannot display track title and artist name in other formats.
- WMA files can contain a WMA tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA tags carry information such as track title, artist name.
- The emphasis function is available only when playing MP3/WMA files recorded at 32, 44.1 and 48 kHz.

**Sampling frequency**

MP3 files for MP3 player:

MPEG 1 LAYER 3 — 32, 44.1, 48 kHz  
MPEG 2 LSF LAYER 3 — 16, 22.05, 24 kHz

MP3 files for USB memory:

MPEG 1 AUDIO LAYER 2, 3 — 32, 44.1, 48 kHz  
MPEG 2 AUDIO LAYER 2, 3 — 16, 22.05, 24 kHz

MPEG 2.5 — 8, 11.025, 12 kHz

WMA files for WMA player:

Ver. 7, 8, 9 CBR — 32, 44.1, 48 kHz

WMA files for USB memory:

Ver. 9 — HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 kHz

- The sound quality of MP3/WMA files generally improves with higher bit rates. In order to achieve a reasonable level of sound quality, discs recorded with a bit rate of at least 128 kbps are recommended.

**Playable bit rates**

MP3 files for MP3 player:

MPEG1 LAYER3 — 64 to 320 kbps  
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3 — 64 to 160 kbps

MP3 files for USB memory:

MPEG 1 AUDIO LAYER 2, 3 — 32 to 320 kbps  
MPEG 2 AUDIO LAYER 2, 3 — 32 to 160 kbps

MPEG 2.5 — 32 to 160 kbps

WMA files for WMA player:

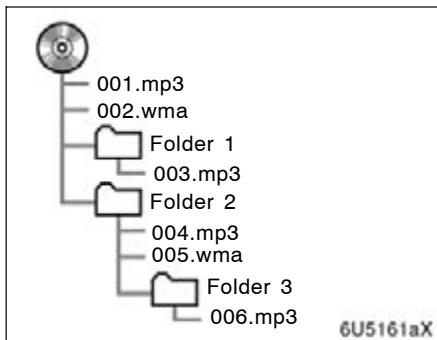
Ver. 7, 8 CBR — 48 to 192 kbps

Ver. 9 CBR — 48 to 320 kbps

WMA files for USB memory:

Ver. 9 CBR — 32 to 320 kbps

- M3u playlists are not compatible with the audio player.
- MP3i (MP3 interactive) and MP3PRO formats are not compatible with the audio player.
- The player is compatible with VBR (Variable Bit Rate).
- When playing back files recorded as VBR (Variable Bit Rate) files, the play time will not be correctly displayed if fast-forward or reverse operations are used.
- It is not possible to check folders that do not include MP3/WMA files.
- MP3/WMA files in folders up to 8 levels deep can be played. However, the start of playback may be delayed when using discs containing numerous levels of folders. For this reason, we recommend creating discs with no more than two levels of folders.



- The play order of the compact disc with the structure shown above is as follows:

001.mp3 → 002.wma . . . → 006.mp3  
 ↑

- MP3/WMA player — It is possible to play up to 192 folders or 255 files on one disc.
- USB memory — It is possible to play up to 999 folders, 255 files per folder or 65,025 files in device.
- The order changes depending on the PC and MP3/WMA encoding software you use.

#### CD-R and CD-RW discs

- CD-R/CD-RW discs that have not been subject to the "finalizing process" (a process that allows discs to be played on a conventional CD player) cannot be played.
- It may not be possible to play CD-R/CD-RW discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, condensation, etc. on the lens of the unit.
- It may not be possible to play discs recorded on a personal computer depending on the application settings and the environment. Record with the correct format. (For details, contact the appropriate application manufacturers of the applications.)
- CD-R/CD-RW discs may be damaged by direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures or other storage conditions. The unit may be unable to play some damaged discs.
- If you insert a CD-RW disc into the MP3/WMA player, playback will begin more slowly than with a conventional CD or CD-R disc.
- Recordings on CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played using the DDCD (Double Density CD) system.

## TERMS

### **Packet write —**

This is a general term that describes the process of writing data on-demand to CD-R, etc., in the same way that data is written to floppy or hard discs.

### **ID3 Tag —**

This is a method of embedding track-related information in an MP3 file. This embedded information can include the track title, the artist's name, the album title, the music genre, the year of production, comments and other data. The contents can be freely edited using software with ID3 tag editing functions. Although the tags are restricted to the number of characters, the information can be viewed when the track is played back.

### **WMA Tag —**

WMA files can contain a WMA tag that is used in the same way as an ID3 tag. WMA tags carry information such as track title, artist name.

### **ISO 9660 format —**

This is the international standard for the formatting of CD-ROM folders and files. For the ISO 9660 format, there are two levels of regulations.

#### **Level 1:**

The file name is in 8.3 format (8 character file names, with a 3 character file extension. File names must be composed of one-byte capital letters and numbers. The “\_” symbol may also be included.)

#### **Level 2:**

The file name can have up to 31 characters (including the separation mark “.” and file extension). Each folder must contain fewer than 8 hierarchies.

### **m3u —**

Playlists created using “WINAMP” software have a playlist file extension (.m3u).

### **MP3 —**

MP3 is an audio compression standard determined by a working group (MPEG) of the ISO (International Standard Organization). MP3 compresses audio data to about 1/10 the size of that on conventional discs.

### **WMA—**

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is an audio compression format developed by Microsoft®. It compresses files into a size smaller than that of MP3 files. The decoding formats for WMA files are Ver. 7, 8, and 9.

**SECTION 8**

**AIR CONDITIONING**

- Automatic air conditioning controls ..... 296

## AIR CONDITIONING

### Automatic air conditioning controls

Operations such as changing the air outlets or fan speed are carried out on the screen. To display the air conditioning control screen, push the “CLIMATE” button.

#### ► Without rear air conditioning system



- |   |     |   |          |
|---|-----|---|----------|
| [1] <b>“CLIMATE” button</b><br>(Air conditioning operation screen display button) ..... | 299 | [7] <b>“A/C”</b> .....  | 308      |
| [2] <b>Outside temperature display</b><br>(In degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade) .....   | 312 | [8] <b>“PASSENGER TEMP” buttons</b><br>(Passenger side temperature control button)<br>When you touch this button, the “DUAL” indicator light will be yellow, and then mode will be independent mode. .... | 301, 304 |
| [3] <b>Air flow control buttons</b> .....   | 304 | [9] <b>Air intake control button</b> .....  | 306      |
| [4] <b>Fan speed control buttons</b> .....  | 303 | [10] <b>“DUAL” button</b><br>(Temperature setting mode change button) .....   | 301, 304 |
| [5] <b>Windshield wiper de-icer button</b> .....  | 309 | [11] <b>Rear window defogger button</b> .....   | 310      |
| [6] <b>Micro dust and pollen filter button</b> .....                                    | 311 |   |          |

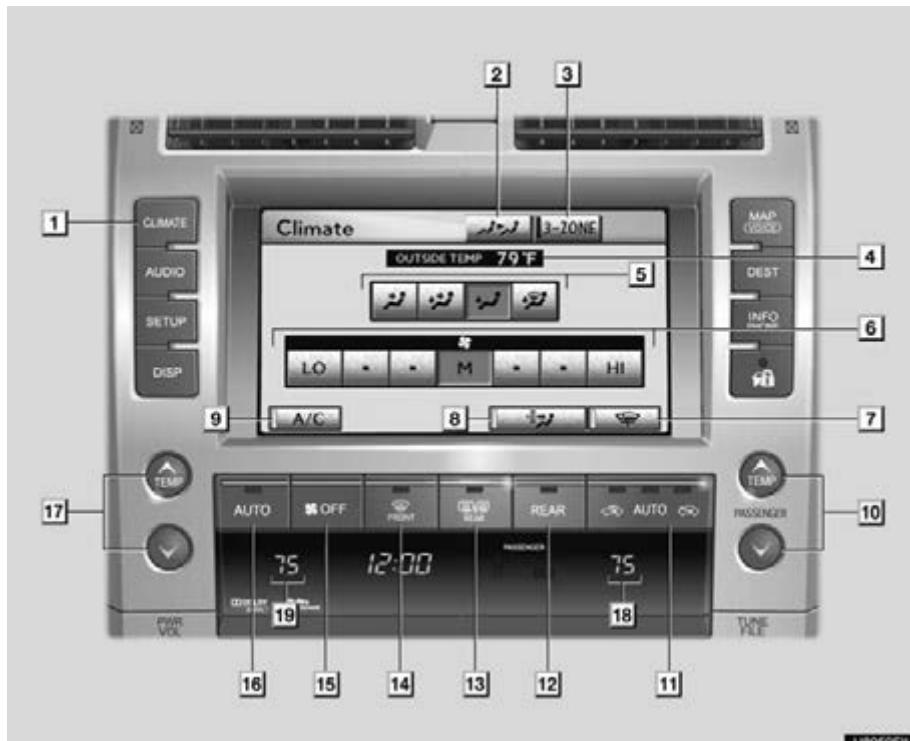
## AIR CONDITIONING

---

- [12] Windshield air flow button**  
..... 307
- [13] “OFF” button** ..... 301, 303
- [14] “AUTO” button** ..... 301
- [15] “TEMP” buttons**  
(Driver side temperature control button) ..... 301, 304
- [16] Passenger side temperature display**  
(In degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)
- [17] Driver side temperature display**  
(In degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)

## AIR CONDITIONING

### ► With rear air conditioning system



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>[1]</b> "CLIMATE" button<br>(Air conditioning operation screen display button) .....   | <b>[9]</b> "A/C" ..... 308   |
| <b>[2]</b> Rear air conditioning control touch-screen button ..... 306                    | <b>[10]</b> "PASSENGER TEMP" buttons<br>(Passenger side temperature control button)<br>When you touch this button, the "3-ZONE" indicator light will be yellow, and then mode will be independent mode. ..... 301, 304 |
| <b>[3]</b> "3-ZONE"<br>(Temperature setting mode change touch-screen button) ..... 301    | <b>[11]</b> Air intake control button ..... 302, 306   |
| <b>[4]</b> Outside temperature display<br>(In degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade) ..... 312 | <b>[12]</b> "REAR" button ..... Owner's manual   |
| <b>[5]</b> Air flow control buttons ..... 304   | <b>[13]</b> Rear window defogger button ..... 310  |
| <b>[6]</b> Fan speed control buttons ..... 303  | <b>[14]</b> Windshield air flow button ..... 307   |
| <b>[7]</b> Windshield wiper de-icer button ..... 309                                      | <b>[15]</b> "OFF" button ..... 301, 303  |
| <b>[8]</b> Micro dust and pollen filter button ..... 311                                  | <b>[16]</b> "AUTO" button ..... 301  |

## AIR CONDITIONING

---

- 17 "TEMP" buttons**  
(Driver side temperature control button) ..... 301, 304
  - 18 Passenger side temperature display**  
(In degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)
  - 19 Driver side temperature display**  
(In degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)
- (a) Climate control  
**Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.**



**Push the "CLIMATE" button to display the air conditioning control screen.**

**INFORMATION**

- When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned on, the air conditioning system settings will be set to those that were in use the last time the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned off. Air conditioning system settings are memorized individually on each electronic key, so the settings reproduced will be specific to the key that is used.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic operation mode.



By pushing the switch above, you can operate the voice command system.

For the operation of the voice command system and the command, see pages 44 and 49.

**NOTICE**

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the air conditioning on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

## (b) Using automatic air conditioning system

- Switching to automatic operation mode



**Push the "AUTO" button.**

The air conditioning system begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Push "OFF" button to turn the air conditioning system off.

- Setting the vehicle interior temperature



Push the "▲" button on "TEMP" to increase the temperature and "▼" to decrease the temperature.

**INFORMATION**

- Turning cool box on also turns on front air conditioning system.
- When the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, the cool box may not operate.

## AIR CONDITIONING



### "DUAL" button (with out rear air conditioning system) —

This button is used to set the temperatures independently for the driver's seat and front passenger seat.

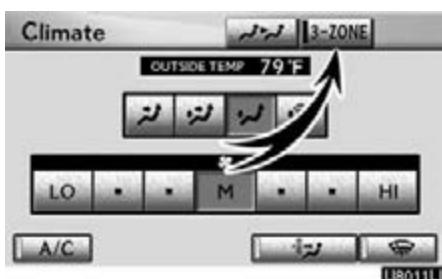
When the "DUAL" button indicator is on, the temperature for the driver's seat and front passenger seat can be adjusted separately.

- Switching the air intake control to automatic mode (with rear air conditioning system)



**Push the air intake control button to switch to automatic mode.**

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.



### "3-ZONE" (with rear air conditioning system) —

This button is used to set the temperatures independently for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats.

When the "3-ZONE" indicator is on, the temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats can be adjusted separately.

## AIR CONDITIONING

- Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode (with rear air conditioning system)

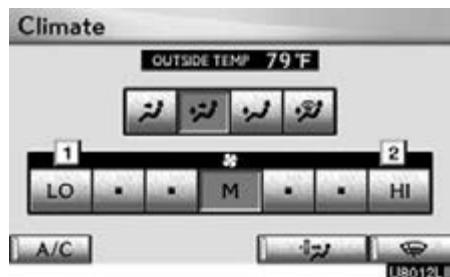
You can adjust smog sensor sensitivity.

The sensitivity level is set to be higher toward “+” and lower toward “−” on “Vehicle Customization” screen.

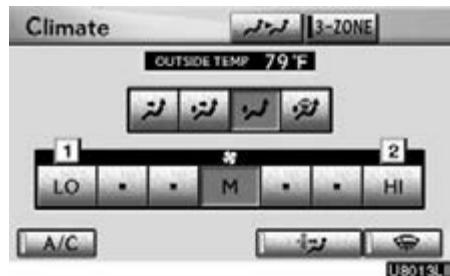
For “Vehicle Customization” screen, see “— Vehicle customization” on page 400.

- (c) Adjusting the settings manually

- Setting the fan speed



► Without rear air conditioning system



► With rear air conditioning system

- [1] Fan speed at low**
- [2] Fan speed at high**

The fan speed can be set to your desired speed by touching the appropriate fan speed control button.

Pushing the “OFF” button turns the fan off.

## AIR CONDITIONING

- Setting the vehicle interior temperature

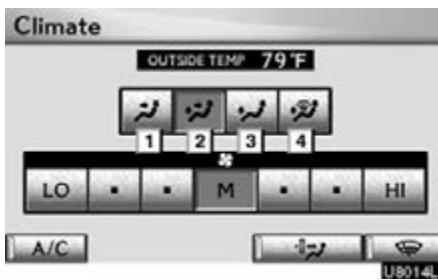


To adjust the temperature setting, push the “ $\wedge$ ” button on “TEMP” to increase the temperature and push the “ $\vee$ ” button to decrease the temperature.

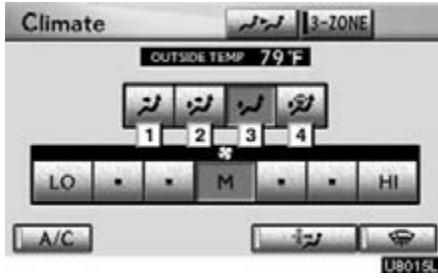
When the “DUAL” button indicator is on, the temperature for the driver’s seat and front passenger seat can be adjusted separately. (without rear air conditioning system)

When the “3-ZONE” indicator is on, the temperature for the driver’s, front passenger’s and rear seats can be adjusted separately. (with rear air conditioning system)

- Switching the air outlets



### ► Without rear air conditioning system



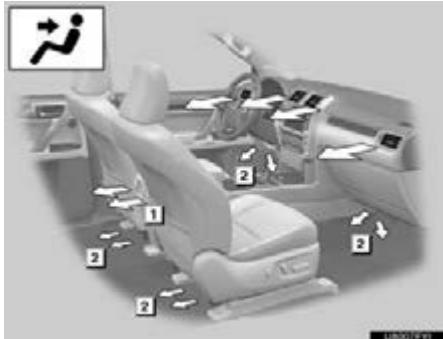
### ► With rear air conditioning system

- 1 Panel
- 2 Bi-level
- 3 Floor
- 4 Floor/windshield

The outlets from which air is delivered can be selected manually by touching the touch-screen button.

The air flow shown on the display indicates the following.

## AIR CONDITIONING



► Air flows to the upper body (Panel)



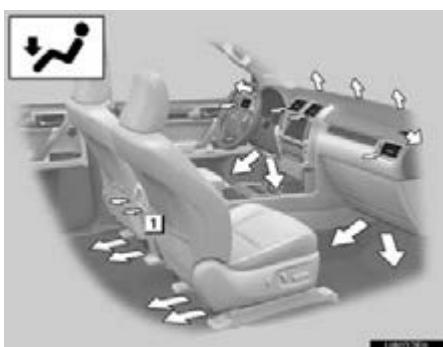
► Air flows to the feet and the wind-shield defogger operates (Floor/windshield)

[1] Without rear air conditioning sys-tem

[2] Only in automatic mode (Air may not always flow.)



► Air flows to the upper body and feet (Bi-level)



► Air flows to the feet (Floor)

## AIR CONDITIONING

- Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes



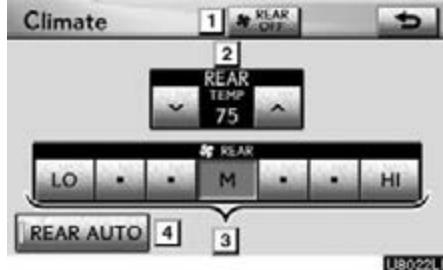
- [1]** Recirculated air mode
- [2]** Automatic mode
- [3]** Outside air mode

**Push the air intake control button.**

The mode switches between recirculated air mode, automatic mode (with rear air conditioning system) and outside air mode each time the button is pushed.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

- Rear air conditioning controls  
(With rear air conditioning system)



- [1]** "REAR OFF" button
- [2]** Temperature control
- [3]** Fan speed control
- [4]** "REAR AUTO" button

**Touch the "REAR AUTO" button.**

The air conditioning system will operate, and air outlets and fan speed will be adjusted automatically.

To adjust the temperature setting, push the "▲" button on "TEMP" to increase the temperature and push the "▼" button to decrease the temperature.

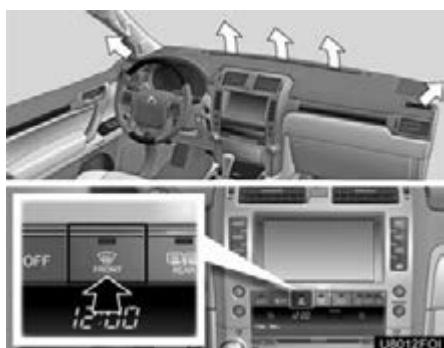
The fan speed can be set to your desired speed by touching the appropriate fan speed control button.

Touch "REAR OFF" to turn the fan off.

### INFORMATION

*When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned on, the air conditioning system settings will be set to those that were in use the last time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned off. Air conditioning system settings are memorized individually on each electronic key, so the settings reproduced will be specific to the key that is used.*

## (e) Defogging the windshield



The air conditioning system operates automatically.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode. It is not possible to return to recirculated air mode when the switch is on.

### CAUTION

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

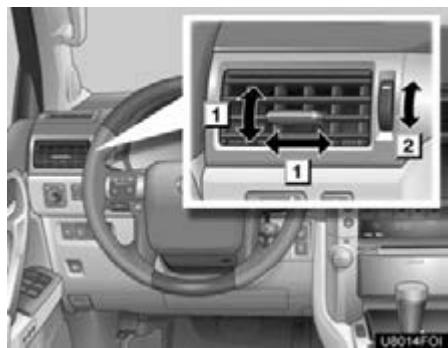
Do not use the windshield air flow button during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

## (f) Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets



## ► Front center outlets

- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent



## ► Front side outlets

- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent



► Rear outlets (without rear air conditioning system)

- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

**INFORMATION**

● **Using automatic mode**

*Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:*

- *Immediately after the button is pushed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.*
- *Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.*
- **Using the system in recirculated air mode**

*The windows will fog up more easily if recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.*

● **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

*Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.*

● **When the outside temperature exceeds 75°F (24°C) and the air conditioning system is on**

*In order to reduce the air conditioning power consumption, the air conditioning system may switch to recirculated air mode automatically. This may also reduce fuel consumption.*

● **Recirculated air mode is selected as a default mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.**

*It is possible to switch to outside air mode at any time by pushing the air intake control button.*

● **Window defogger feature**

*Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to outside air mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.*

● **When outside air temperature is below 32°F (0°C)**

*The cooling and dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is on.*

● **When the indicator light on "A/C" flashes**

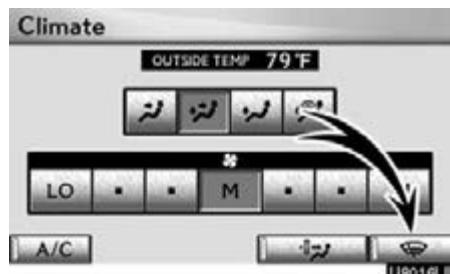
*Touch "A/C" to turn off the air conditioning system and turn it on again. There may be a problem in the air conditioning system if the indicator light continues to flash. Turn the air conditioning system off and have it inspected by your Lexus dealer.*

- **Automatic air intake change mode (with rear air conditioning system)**  
In automatic mode, the system automatically switches between recirculated air and outside air modes according to whether the system detects harmful substances such as exhaust gas in the air outside.

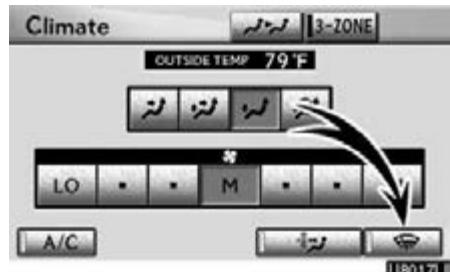
#### (g) Windshield wiper de-icer

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

The windshield wiper de-icer can be operated when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.



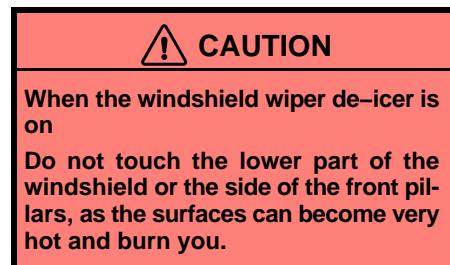
#### ► Without rear air conditioning system



#### ► With rear air conditioning system

Turns the windshield wiper de-icer on/off.

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.



## AIR CONDITIONING

### (h) Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogging



To turn the electric rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger on, push the button above.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch must be in IGNITION ON mode.

The thin heater wires on the inside of the rear window and the heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will quickly clear the surface.

Keep your hands off the mirror faces when the system is on.

The indicator light is on when the defogger is operating.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 255 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

If further defrosting or defogging is desired, simply actuate the switch again. When the surface has cleared, push the button once again to turn the defogger off. Continuous use may cause the battery to discharge, especially during stop-and-go driving. The defogger is not designed to dry rain water or to melt snow.

If the outside rear view mirrors are heavily coated with ice, use a spray de-icer before operating the system.

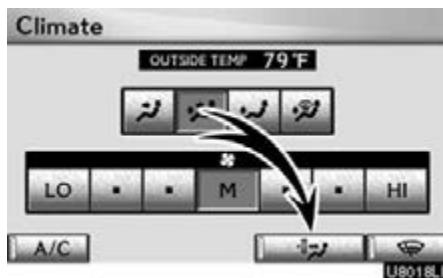
#### NOTICE

- When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or connectors.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, turn the switch off when the engine is not running.

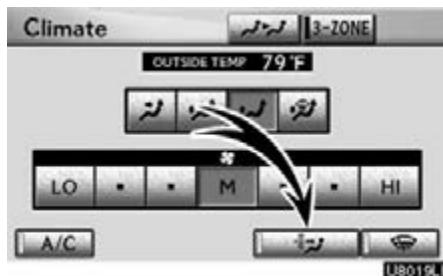
#### CAUTION

When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on, do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirror as it can become very hot and burn you.

## (i) Micro dust and pollen filter



## ► Without rear air conditioning system



## ► With rear air conditioning system

Touch the micro dust and pollen filter button.

Outside air mode switches to recirculated air mode. Pollen is removed from the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, touch the micro dust and pollen filter button again.

**INFORMATION**

- In order to prevent the window from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur:
  - Outside air mode does not switch to recirculated air mode.
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Push the windshield air flow button.

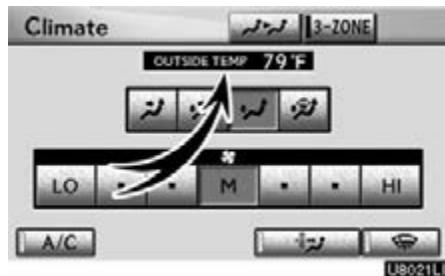
## AIR CONDITIONING

---

### (j) Outside temperature display



#### ► Without rear air conditioning system



#### ► With rear air conditioning system

Outside temperature is displayed on the screen.

The displayed temperature ranges from  $-40^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) up to  $122^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $50^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

If the temperature shows “—” or “E”, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 15.5 mph [25 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

## **SECTION 9**

### **WIDE VIEW FRONT & SIDE MONITOR**

- Wide view front & side monitor ..... 314

## WIDE VIEW FRONT & SIDE MONITOR

### Wide view front & side monitor —

This system can display the wide view front monitor and the side monitor separately or at the same time.

The wide view front monitor uses a super-wide angle lens to display on screen the areas to the left and right of the vehicle and the blind spots to the front of the vehicle. This system helps the driver check for approaching cars, bicycles and pedestrians when at intersections with poor visibility.

The side monitor uses a camera installed in the passenger's side outside rear view mirror to display on screen the area to the front-right of the vehicle, helping the driver check this area.

#### CAUTION

- When using the wide view front & side monitor system, observe these precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.
  - Never depend solely on the monitor system.
  - Always check visually to confirm your intended path is clear.
  - Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
  - Do not use the system if the hood or the front passenger's door is not completely closed.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- Do not use the system in the following cases:
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow.
  - When using tire chains or emergency tires.
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.

#### NOTICE

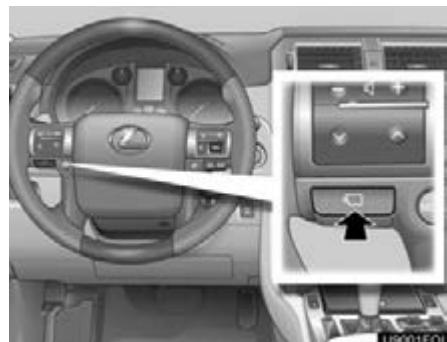
- If the front of the vehicle or the passenger side outside rear view mirror is hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may change. Contact your Lexus dealer.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
- Do not strongly rub the camera lens. If the camera lens is scratched, it can not transmit a clear image.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- When replacing the tires, please consult your Lexus dealer. If you replace the tires, the area displayed on the screen may change.
- Even if an obstacle is no longer visible on the side monitor, do not turn the steering wheel further in the direction the vehicle is turning until the vehicle has moved completely past the obstacle. If the steering wheel is turned to full lock, the vehicle will turn in the smallest possible turning circle, and may collide with the obstacle.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

## WIDE VIEW FRONT & SIDE MONITOR

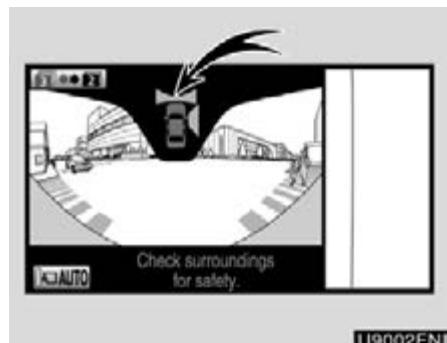
### — Activating the wide view front & side monitor

#### INFORMATION

If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow, or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse.



To display the front or side view, push the wide view front & side monitor switch with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in IGNITION ON mode and vehicle speed at 7 mph (12 km/h) or less.

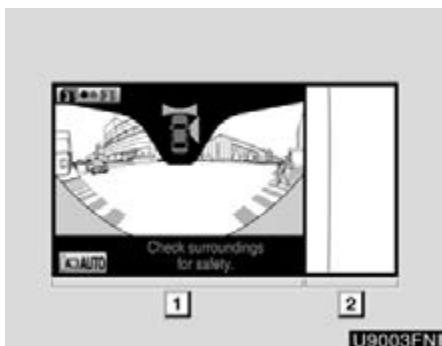


#### INFORMATION

If the wide view front & side monitor is switched to from the rear view monitor system, the icon display area will flash to inform the driver that the currently displayed area is the front and side. The icon display area will continue to flash until the screen is turned off.

## WIDE VIEW FRONT & SIDE MONITOR

### — Display



#### ► Wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display

- 1 Wide view front monitor
- 2 Side monitor

Both the wide view front monitor and the side monitor are displayed on one screen. When switching to the wide view front & side monitors this screen is displayed first, regardless of the screen mode.



#### ► Side monitor

The image from the side camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area to the passenger's side of the vehicle, for example when taking off and stopping, when turning right, etc.

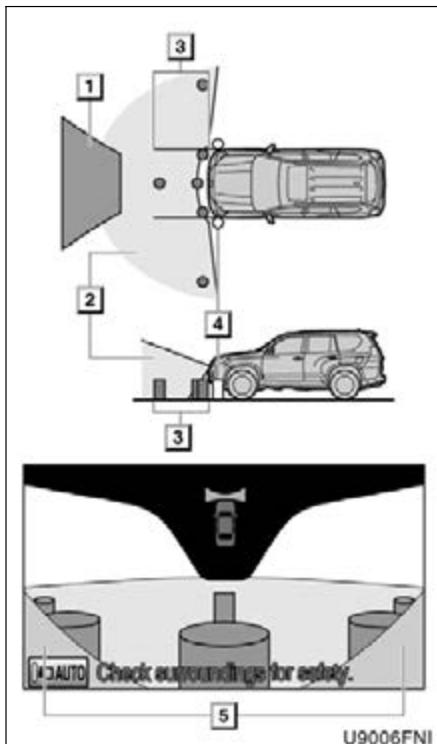
#### INFORMATION

*The side monitor screen can be displayed even if the outside rear view mirrors have been folded. In this case, there will be a slight difference between the image displayed when the outside rear view mirrors are extended and when the outside rear view mirrors have been folded. If the side monitor is displayed while the outside rear view mirrors are folded, you cannot check the area near the front edge of the vehicle as the base of the outside rear view mirrors will be in the way.*

#### ► Wide view front monitor

The image from the front camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area in front of the vehicle for safety, for example in intersections with poor visibility.

● Displayed area



► Front camera

**[1] Masking**

This section is masked to prevent the driver from moving the vehicle while only watching the wide view front monitor screen. The driver must visually confirm this area directly.

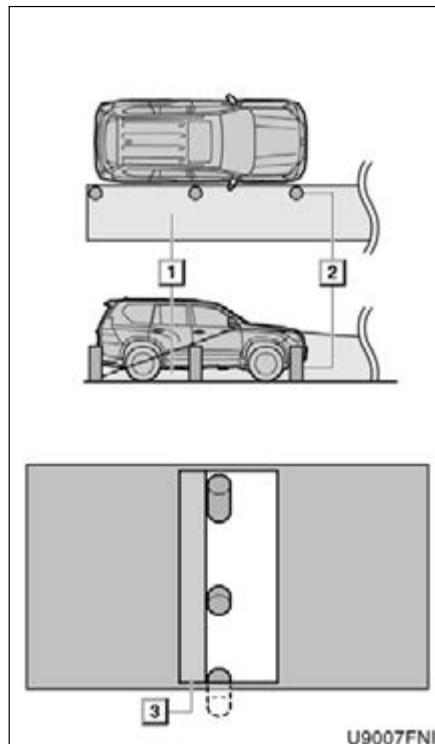
**[2] Camera's field of view**

**[3] Objects visible to the camera**

**[4] Objects not visible to the camera**

**[5] Parts of the vehicle (bumper\*, grill, etc.)**

\*: Corners of the bumper are not displayed.



► Side camera

**[1] Camera's field of view**

**[2] Objects visible to the camera**

**[3] Passenger's side of vehicle**

The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

## WIDE VIEW FRONT & SIDE MONITOR

- Wide view front & side monitor cameras



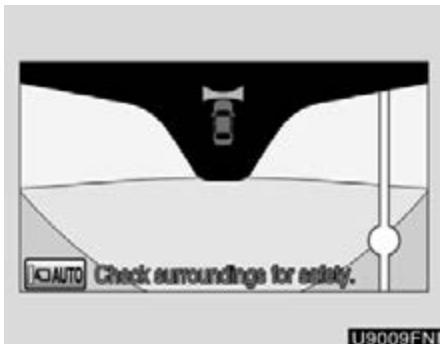
- ▶ **1 Side camera**
- 2 Front camera**

When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- In the dark (e.g. at night).
- If the temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- If water droplets get on the camera, or when humidity is high (e.g. when it rains).
- If the camera has scratches or dirt on it.
- If foreign matter (e.g. snow or mud) get on the camera lens.
- If the sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.
- If the camera lens is damaged by flying stones.

- Smear effect



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, a smear effect\* peculiar to the camera may occur.

\*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the light source will appear to have streaks of light emanating from it. The streaks will also appear when the light source is in the masked area.

## WIDE VIEW FRONT & SIDE MONITOR

### (a) Changing the screen mode

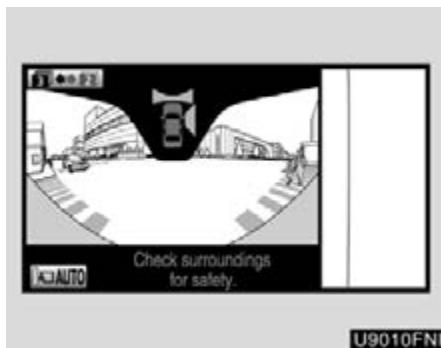
This system has a 2 screen mode and a 3 screen mode.

#### 2 screen mode :

Only the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display can be used.

#### 3 screen mode :

The wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display or the individual display can be used. The display can be switched between the simultaneous display and the individual display by operating the wide view front and side monitor switch.



**Touch [3] or [3]** on the wide view front and side monitor simultaneous display screen.

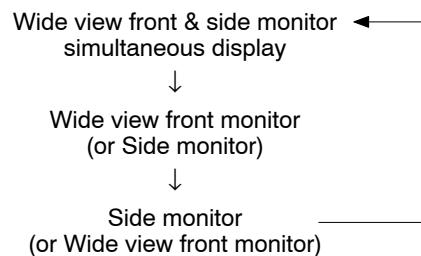
If the screen is changed to the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display screen while the rear view monitor system is activated, it is not possible to switch to the 3 screen mode. (The switch is not displayed.)

### (b) Changing the display in 3 screen mode

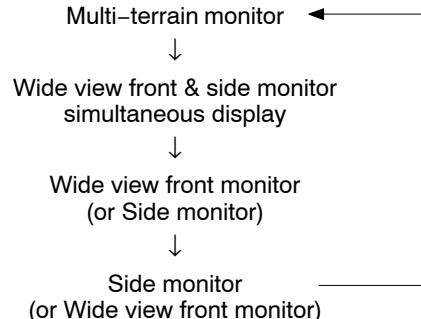
When in 3 screen mode, you can change the display from the simultaneous display to each individual display.

The screen changes as follows with each press of the wide view front and side monitor switch.

#### ► When the multi-terrain monitor is not in use



#### ► When the multi-terrain monitor is in use



The wide view front monitor and side monitor individual displays are not accessible when the shift lever is in "R".

## WIDE VIEW FRONT & SIDE MONITOR

---

### (c) Automatic display mode

You can set the automatic display mode, which automatically changes the display.

Touch  .

When automatic display mode is on, you can have the system display automatically in the following situations:

- The shift lever is in “N”, “D” or “S”.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.

 will not be displayed when the shift lever is in “R”.

#### **INFORMATION**

*In the following situations, the system is canceled automatically.*

- *When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 7 mph (12 km/h).*
- *When the shift lever is in “R”.*

***SECTION 10***  
**INTUITIVE PARKING ASSIST**

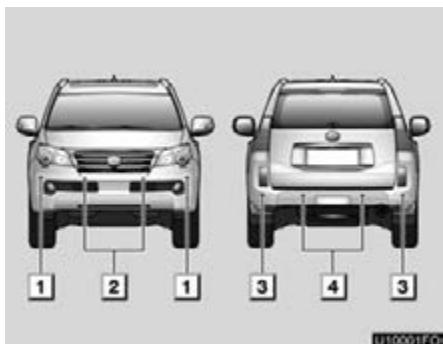
- Intuitive parking assist ..... 322

## INTUITIVE PARKING ASSIST

### Intuitive parking assist —

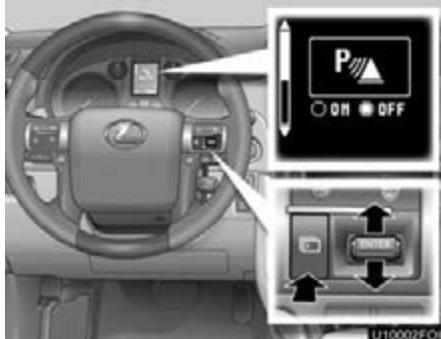
The distance to obstacles measured by the sensors is communicated via the display and a buzzer when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

#### • Types of sensors



- 1 Front corner sensors
- 2 Front center sensors
- 3 Rear corner sensors
- 4 Rear center sensors

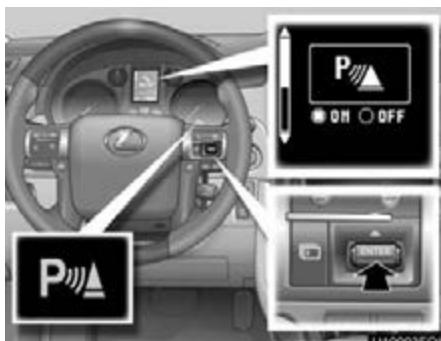
#### • Setting the intuitive parking assist mode



#### 1. Push the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

#### 2. Push the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards until the intuitive parking assist mark appears in the multi-information display.



The intuitive parking assist indicator will be displayed.

Each pushing of the switch turns the intuitive parking assist on and off.

To turn on: Push the switch. The buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.

To turn off: Push the switch again.

Push the menu switch to change to the normal display.

## — Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, the graphic is shown on the multi-information display and navigation display according to position and distance to the obstacle.

- **Multi-information display**



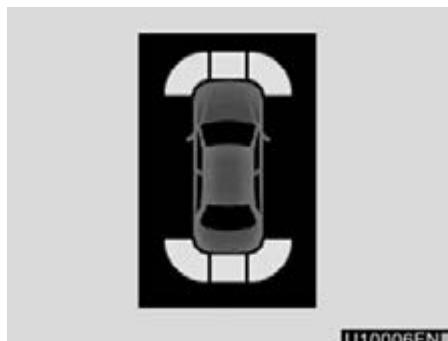
- [1] Front corner sensors operation**
- [2] Front center sensors operation**
- [3] Rear corner sensors operation**
- [4] Rear center sensors operation**

- **Navigation display**



The graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (See page 401.)

**WHEN THE REAR VIEW MONITOR SYSTEM OR WIDE VIEW FRONT & SIDE MONITOR IS IN USE**



A simplified image is displayed when an obstacle is detected.

## INTUITIVE PARKING ASSIST

### — The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

#### CORNER SENSORS

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example	—			
Buzzer	—	Medium	Fast	Continuous

#### CENTER SENSORS

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example				
Buzzer	Slow	Medium	Fast	Continuous

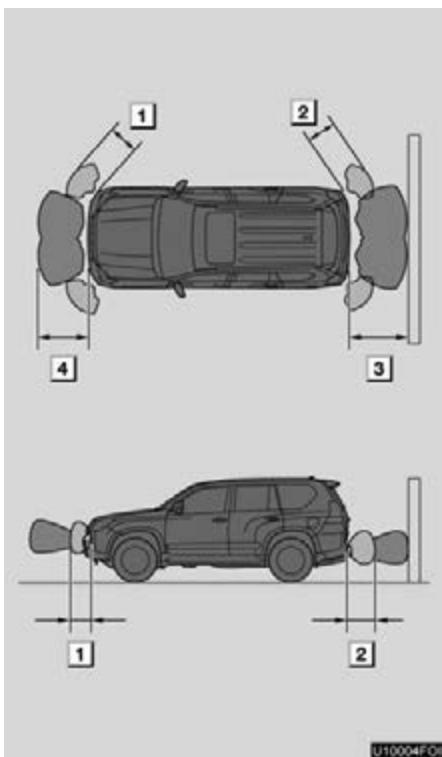
#### ● Detection level and approximate distance to an obstacle

Level	1	2	3	4
Front corner sensors	—	2.0 to 1.6 ft. (60 to 47.5 cm)	1.6 to 1.1 ft. (47.5 to 35 cm)	1.1 ft. (35 cm) or less
Front center sensors	3.3 to 1.6 ft. (100 to 50 cm)	1.6 to 1.2 ft. (50 to 37.5 cm)	1.2 to 1.0 ft. (37.5 to 30 cm)	1.0 ft. (30 cm) or less
Rear corner sensors	—	1.8 to 1.2 ft. (55 to 37.5 cm)	1.2 to 0.8 ft. (37.5 to 25 cm)	0.8 ft. (25 cm) or less
Rear center sensors	4.9 to 2.1 ft. (150 to 65 cm)	2.1 to 1.6 ft. (65 to 50 cm)	1.6 to 1.3 ft. (50 to 40 cm)	1.3 ft. (40 cm) or less

#### INFORMATION

*Settings (e.g. buzzer volume) can be changed. (See page 401.)*

### — Detection range of the sensors



- [1] Approximately 2.0 ft. (60 cm)**
- [2] Approximately 1.8 ft. (55 cm)**
- [3] Approximately 4.9 ft. (150 cm)**
- [4] Approximately 3.3 ft. (100 cm)**

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

### — Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.
- There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
- A sensor is frozen.
- A sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or radio antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or right-angled curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

## INTUITIVE PARKING ASSIST

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
  - Sharply-angled objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

### CAUTION

**Caution when using the intuitive parking assist**

Observe the following precautions.

- Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.
  - Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
  - Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.
- Even though sensors which are functioning properly continue to detect obstacles, never use the intuitive parking assist if one or more sensor(s) may be malfunctioning.

### NOTICE

- **Notes when washing the vehicle**  
*Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor and surrounding area.*  
*Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.*
- **As the intuitive parking assist might be malfunctioning in the following cases, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.**
  - *The graphic which indicates that an obstacle has been detected does not come on and a beep does not sound even when the intuitive parking assist mode is turned on.*
  - *The graphic which indicates that an obstacle has been detected comes on despite no obstacle around the vehicle.*
  - *If your vehicle has been involved in an accident.*
  - *If the graphic which indicates that an obstacle has been detected remains on without a beeping sound.*

### — Intuitive parking assist failure warning

If an error is detected when the intuitive parking assist is turned on, the vehicle symbol comes on or flashes with beeping sounds.

The intuitive parking assist failure warning display is not given in either of the following operations:

- Changing to another screen
- Turning the intuitive parking assist mode off

- When snowflakes or mud gets on the sensors



If this message appears, remove the foreign matter from the sensor.

If the failure warning does not go off even after the foreign matter is removed, the intuitive parking assist may be malfunctioning. Have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

## INTUITIVE PARKING ASSIST

---

- When the sensor is malfunctioning



If this message appears, have the intuitive parking assist checked by your Lexus dealer.

- Certification

**For vehicles sold in Canada.**

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.

Cet appareil ISM est conforme à la norme NMB-001 du Canada.

# SECTION 11

## SETUP

- General settings ..... 330  
(Used for language selection and the on/off settings of operation sounds and automatic screen change.)
- Clock settings ..... 335  
(Used for changing time zones and the on/off settings of daylight saving time.)
- Voice settings ..... 337  
(Voice guidance can be set.)
- Navigation settings ..... 340  
("Home" and "Preset Destinations" can be set and edited.)
- Detailed navigation settings ..... 340  
(Average cruising speed, displayed screen contents, and POI icon categories can be set.)
- Telephone settings ..... 349  
(Bluetooth® phones can be registered.)
- Audio settings ..... 388  
(Settings are available for portable audio devices and Bluetooth® audio devices players.)
- Vehicle settings ..... 395  
(Vehicle information can be set.)
- Other settings ..... 403  
(Used for changing settings for Lexus Insider and XM® Sports and Stocks.)

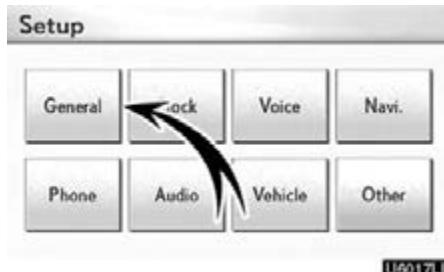
## SETUP

### General settings

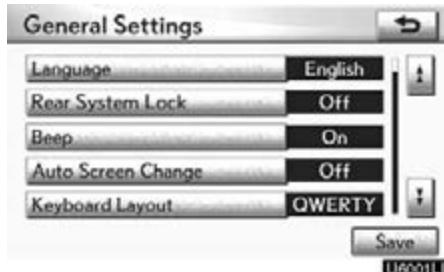
Used for language selection and the on/off settings of operation sounds and automatic screen change.



1. Push the "SETUP" button.



2. Touch "General".



3. Touch the items to be set.
4. Touch "Save".

### SCREENS FOR GENERAL SETTINGS

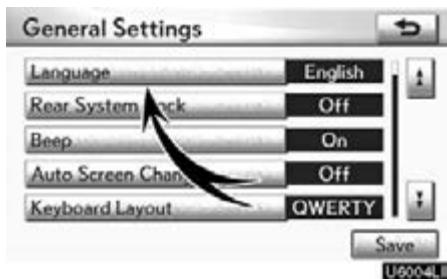
On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

No.	Function
1	You can change the language. (See “● Selecting a language” on page 331.)
2	Rear system lock* can be set to “On” or “Off”. (See “● Rear system lock” on page 332.) *: Vehicles with rear seat entertainment system
3	“On” or “Off” can be selected to sound beeps.
4	“On” or “Off” can be selected for automatic screen changes from the audio/air conditioner screen to the map. When “On” is selected, the screen will automatically return to the map from the audio/air conditioner screen after 20 seconds.
5	Keyboard layout can be changed. (See “● Selecting a keyboard layout” on page 332.)
6	Distance unit can be changed. (See “● Unit of measurement” on page 333.)
7	The personal data can be deleted. (See “● Delete personal data” on page 334.)

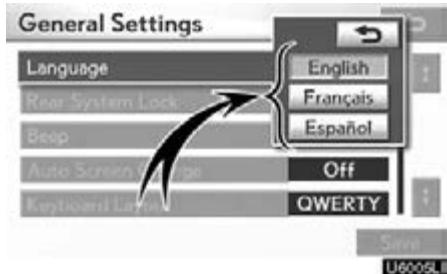
#### ● Selecting a language

You can change the language.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “General” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Language”.



4. Touch the desired button.

The previous screen will be displayed.

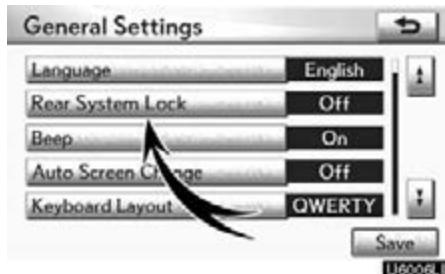
5. Touch “Save”.

## SETUP

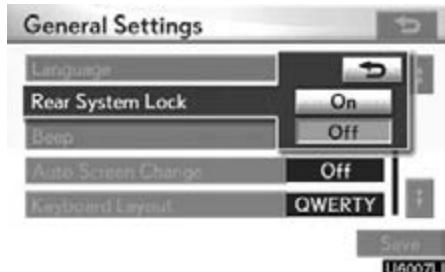
- **Rear system lock (with rear seat entertainment system)**

If the vehicle is equipped with the rear seat entertainment system, the rear seat entertainment system can be locked to prevent rear passengers from operating the entertainment system.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “General” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Rear System Lock”.



4. Select “On” or “Off” and then touch “Save”.

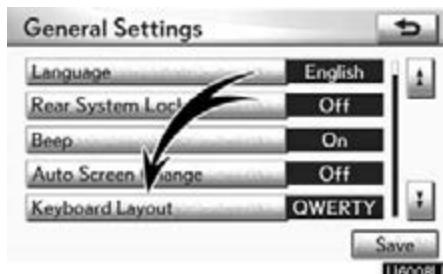
**“On”:** The rear passengers cannot operate the rear seat entertainment system. Only front passengers can operate the system.

**“Off”:** Both the front and rear passengers can operate the rear seat entertainment system.

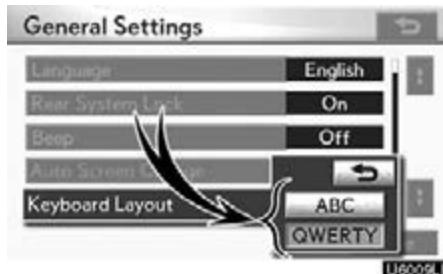
- **Selecting a keyboard layout**

Keyboard layout can be changed.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “General” on the “Setup” screen.

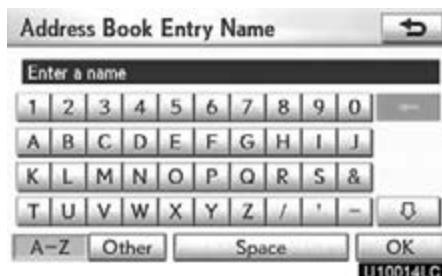


3. Touch “Keyboard Layout”.

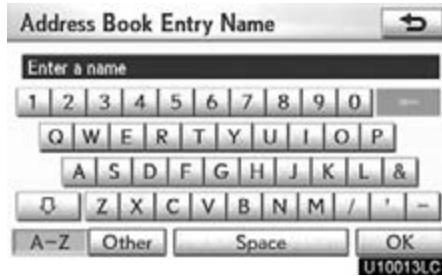


4. Touch “ABC” or “QWERTY” of “Keyboard Layout” to choose the keyboard layout.

5. Touch “Save”.

**LAYOUT TYPE**

► “ABC” type

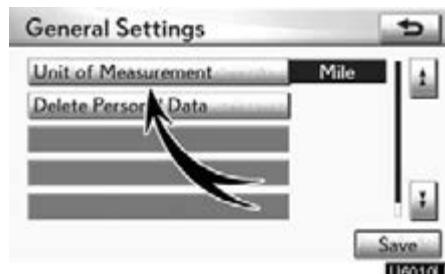


► “QWERTY” type

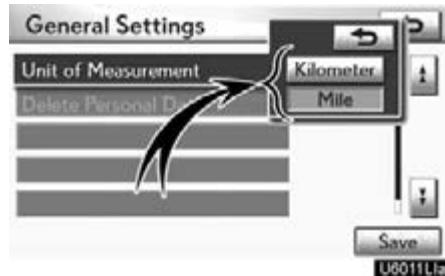
**● Unit of measurement**

Distance unit can be changed.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “General” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Unit of Measurement”.



4. Touch “Kilometer” or “Mile”.

5. Touch “Save”.

**INFORMATION**

*This function is available only in English or Spanish. To switch language, see “● Selecting a language” on page 331.*

## SETUP

### ● Delete personal data

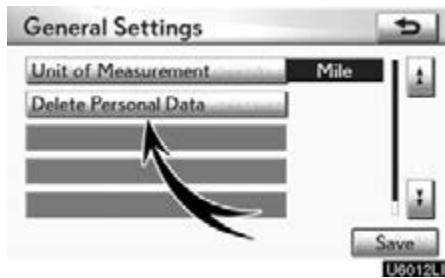
The following personal data can be deleted or returned to their default settings:

- Maintenance conditions
- Maintenance information “off” setting
- Address book
- Areas to avoid
- Previous points
- Route guidance
- Route trace
- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Voice tag data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Phone volume setting
- Details phone setting

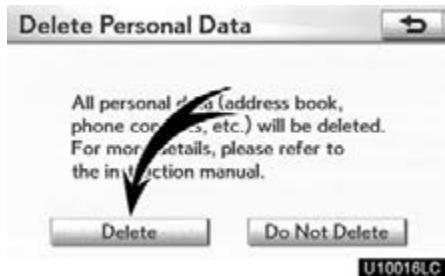
This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### 1. Push the “SETUP” button.

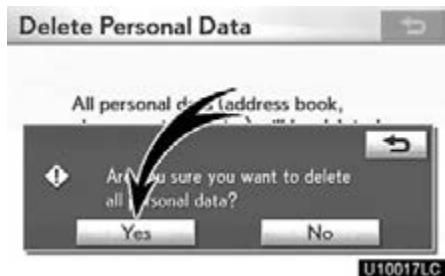
### 2. Touch “General” on the “Setup” screen.



### 3. Touch “Delete Personal Data”.



### 4. Touch “Delete”.



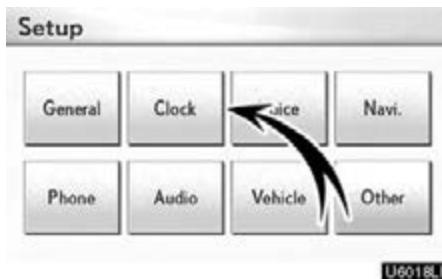
### 5. Touch “Yes”.

## Clock settings

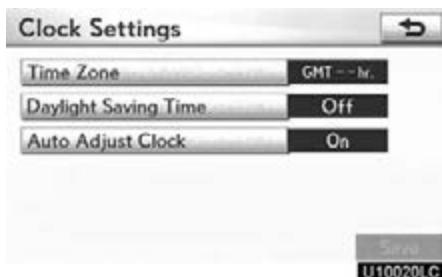
Used for changing time zones and the on/off settings of daylight saving time.



1. Push the "SETUP" button.

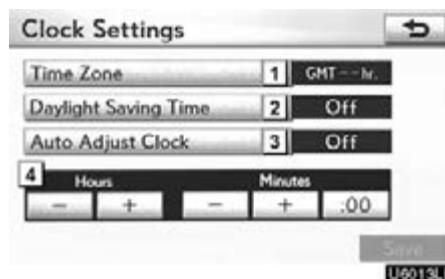


2. Touch "Clock".



3. Touch the items to be set.
4. Touch "Save".

### SCREEN FOR CLOCK SETTINGS



On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

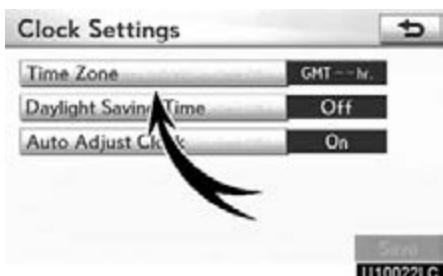
No.	Function
1	Time zone can be changed. (See "● Time zone" on page 336.)
2	"On" or "Off" can be selected for daylight savings time.
3	"On" or "Off" can be selected for automatic adjustment of the clock.
4	When "Auto Adjust Clock" is turned "Off", the clock can be manually adjusted. (See "● Manual clock setting" on page 336.)

## SETUP

### ● Time zone

A time zone can be selected and GMT can be set.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Clock” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Time Zone”.



4. Touch the desired time zone.

If you touch “Other”, adjust the zone manually.

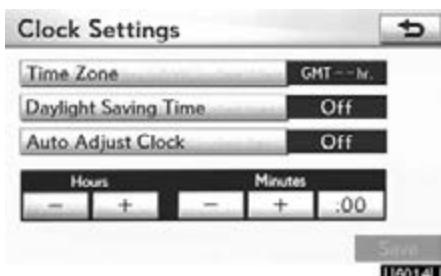


5. Touch “OK”.

### ● Manual clock setting

When “Auto Adjust Clock” is turned “Off”, the clock can be manually adjusted.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Clock” on the “Setup” screen.



**Hours “+”, “-”:** Touch “+” to set the time forward one hour and “-” to set the time back one hour.

**Minutes “+”, “-”:** Touch “+” to set the time forward one minute and “-” to set the time back one minute.

**Minutes “:00”:** Rounds to the nearest hour.\*

\*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00  
1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

3. Touch “Save”.

## Voice settings

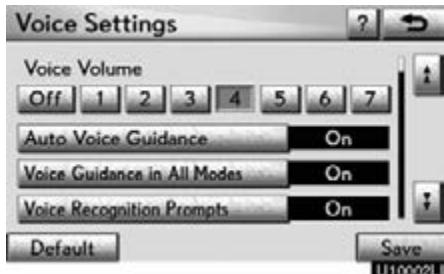
Voice guidance can be set.



1. Push the "SETUP" button.

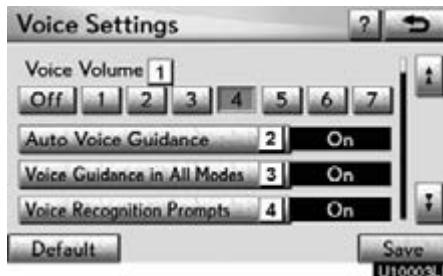


2. Touch "Voice".



3. Touch the items to be set.
4. Touch "Save".

SCREEN FOR VOICE SETTINGS



On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

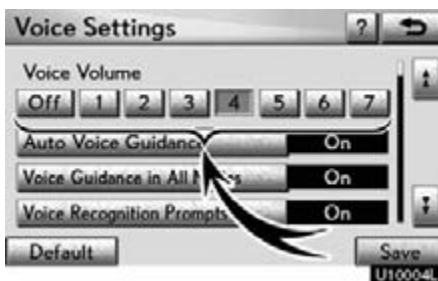
## SETUP

No.	Function
[1]	The voice guidance volume can be adjusted or switched off. (See "● Voice volume" on page 338.)
[2]	Voice guidance during route guidance can be set to "On" or "Off".
[3]	Voice guidance during audio system use can be set to "On" or "Off".
[4]	Voice recognition prompt can be set to "On" or "Off". This setting can also be changed on the "Voice Menu" screen. (See page 44.)
[5]	When "On" is selected, the voice command system can be operated without pressing the talk switch more than once.
[6]	When using the traffic information function, voice guidance can be set to "On" or "Off". (See "● Traffic voice guidance" on page 339.)
[7]	When using the XM NavWeather™ function, the severe weather warning can be set to "On" or "Off".
[8]	Voice guidance projection can be set to the "Center" position or the "Driver" position. (See "● Voice guidance speaker" on page 339.)

### ● Voice volume

The voice guidance volume can be adjusted or switched off.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Voice" on the "Setup" screen.



3. Select the desired level by touching the number.

If voice guidance is not needed, touch "Off" to disable the feature.

When selected, the number or "Off" will be highlighted.

4. Touch "Save".

- **Traffic voice guidance**

You can receive congestion information through voice guidance while being guided to your destination.

To turn the "Traffic Voice Guidance" on:

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Voice" on the "Setup" screen.



3. Touch "On" of the "Traffic Voice Guidance".

4. Touch "Save".

#### INFORMATION

- This function is available only in English. To select English, see "● Selecting a language" on page 331.
- When the "Traffic Information" indicator is dimmed, "Auto Avoid Traffic", "Traffic Voice Guidance" and "Show Free Flowing Traffic" will not operate.

- **Voice guidance speaker**

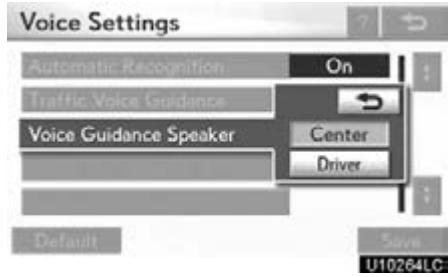
The projection position of voice guidance can be adjusted.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.

2. Touch "Voice" on the "Setup" screen.



3. Touch "Voice Guidance Speaker".



4. Touch "Center" or "Driver".

5. Touch "Save".

## SETUP

### Navigation settings

Points or areas on the map can be registered.



On this screen, the following operations can be performed.

No.	Function
[1]	Sets home (See page 111.)
[2]	Sets preset destinations (See page 113.)
[3]	Sets address book (See page 116.)
[4]	Sets area to avoid (See page 122.)
[5]	Deletes previous destinations (See page 127.)
[6]	Detailed navigation settings (See page 340.)

### Detailed navigation settings

Average cruising speed, displayed screen contents, and POI icon categories can be set.



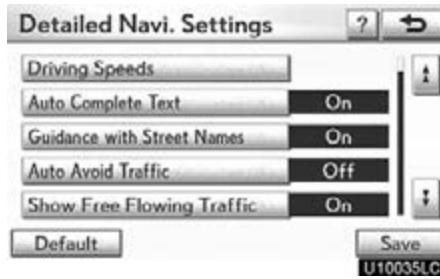
1. Push the "SETUP" button.



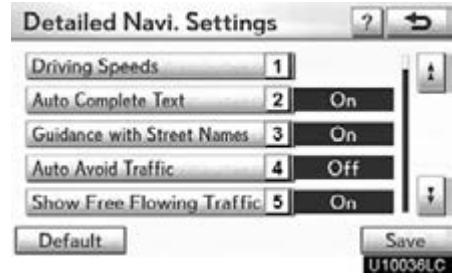
2. Touch "Navi.".



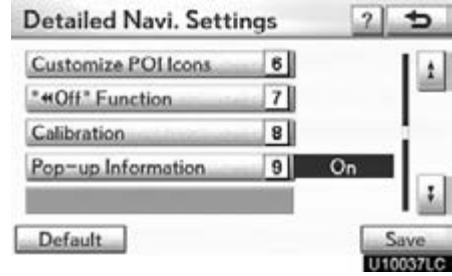
3. Touch "Detailed Navi. Settings".



#### SCREENS FOR NAVIGATION SETTINGS



4. Touch the items to be set.
5. Touch "Save".



On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

No.	Function
1	Average cruising speed can be set. (See "● Driving speeds" on page 342.)
2	The automatic input function can be set to "On" or "Off".
3	During route guidance, voice guidance for the next street name can be set to "On" or "Off".
4	"On" or "Off" can be selected to display cautionary messages when the route includes traffic restrictions or seasonally restricted roads.
5	When "On" is selected, freely flowing traffic can be shown with the arrow.

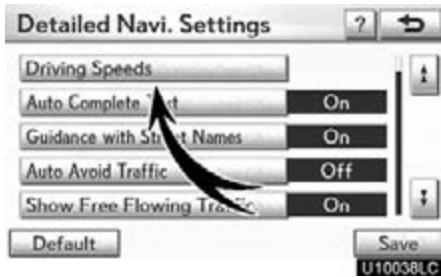
## SETUP

No.	Function
[6]	Displayed POI icon categories can be set. (See “● POI category change (Select POI icons)” on page 345.)
[7]	Buttons displayed on the map screen when “◀◀Off” is selected can be set. (See “● Screen layout function (“◀◀Off” function)” on page 346.)
[8]	The current vehicle position mark can be adjusted manually. Miscalculation of the distance caused by tire replacement can also be adjusted. (See “● Current position/tire change calibration” on page 346.)
[9]	Display of pop-up information can be set to “On” or “Off”. (See “● Pop-up information” on the page 348.)

### ● Driving speeds

The speed that is used for the calculation of the estimated travel time and the estimated arrival time can be set.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Detailed Navi. Settings” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “Driving Speeds”.



5. Touch ▶ or ▶ to set the average vehicle speeds for “Residential”, “Main Streets”, and “Freeways”.

To set the default speeds, touch “Default”.

6. After setting of the desired speeds is completed, touch “Save”.

### INFORMATION

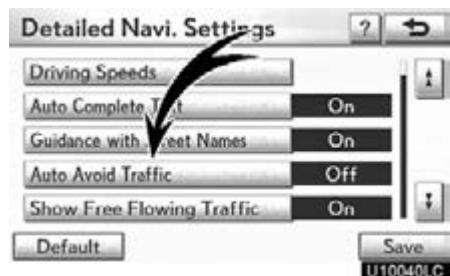
- *The displayed time to the destination is the approximate driving time that is calculated based on the selected speeds and the actual position along the guidance route.*
- *The time shown on the screen may vary greatly depending on progress along the route, which may be affected by conditions such as traffic jams and construction work.*
- *It is possible to display up to 99 hours 59 minutes.*

● **Auto avoid traffic**

The guidance route automatically changes to another route to avoid heavy congestion.

To turn the “Auto Avoid Traffic” on:

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Detailed Navi. Settings” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “On” of the “Auto Avoid Traffic”.

5. Touch “Save”.



When congestion information about the guidance route has been received, a screen will appear to ask you whether to reroute to avoid the congestion.

If you wish to reroute, touch “Yes”. Another route to allow you to avoid the congestion will appear.

If you do not wish to reroute, touch “No”.

## SETUP

---

### INFORMATION

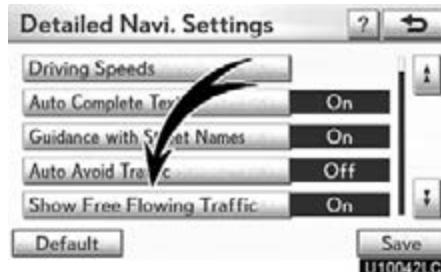
*When the “Traffic Information” indicator is dimmed, “Auto Avoid Traffic”, “Traffic Voice Guidance” and “Show Free Flowing Traffic” will not operate.*

- **Show free flowing traffic**

Freely flowing traffic is shown with the arrow.

To turn the “Show Free Flowing Traffic” on:

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Detailed Navi. Settings” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “On” of the “Show Free Flowing Traffic”.
5. Touch “Save”.

### INFORMATION

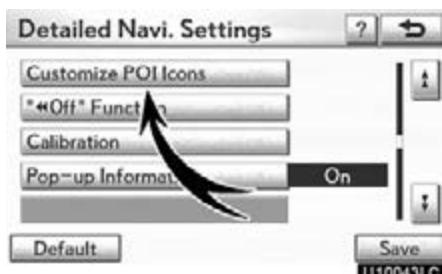
*When the “Traffic Information” indicator is dimmed, “Auto Avoid Traffic”, “Traffic Voice Guidance” and “Show Free Flowing Traffic” will not operate.*

## SETUP

- **POI category change  
(Select POI icons)**

Select from among the 6 icons displayed on the "Customize POI Icons" screen, so that setting of the icons to be displayed on the map screen can be done easily.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Detailed Navi. Settings" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Touch "Customize POI Icons".



5. Touch the category button to be changed.



6. Touch the desired group.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, touch "List All Categories" to list all POI categories.



7. Touch the desired category.

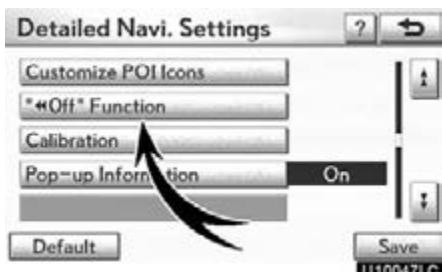
8. Touch "OK".

## SETUP

- Screen layout function (“◀◀Off” function)

Each screen buttons and current street name on the map screen can be displayed or hidden.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Detailed Navi. Settings” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “◀◀Off” Function”.



5. Touch the button to be turned off. The button becomes dimmed.

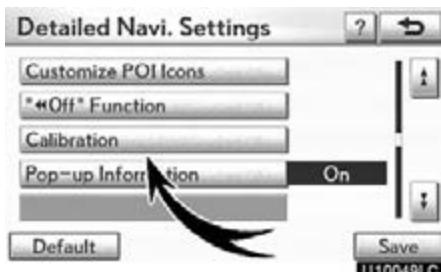
To set the default, touch “Default”.

6. Touch “Save”.

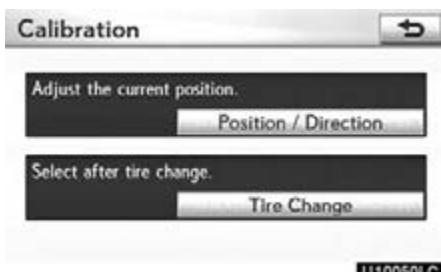
- Current position/tire change calibration

The current vehicle position mark can be adjusted manually. Miscalculation of the distance caused by tire replacement can also be adjusted.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Navi.” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Detailed Navi. Settings” on the “Navigation Settings” screen.



4. Touch “Calibration”.



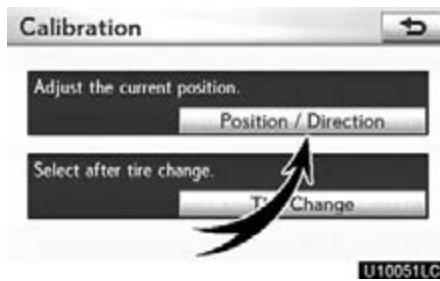
5. Touch the desired button.

### INFORMATION

For additional information on the accuracy of a current vehicle position, see “Limitations of the navigation system” on page 406.

**POSITION/DIRECTION CALIBRATION**

When driving, the current vehicle position mark will be automatically corrected by GPS signals. If GPS reception is poor due to location, you can manually adjust the current vehicle position mark.



1. Touch "Position / Direction".



2. Touch the 8 directional button to move the cursor  $\diamond$  to the desired point on the map.
3. Touch "OK".



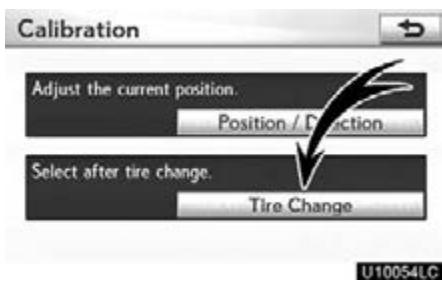
4. Touch either the  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to adjust the direction of the current vehicle position mark.
5. Touch "OK".

The map will be displayed.

## SETUP

### TIRE CHANGE CALIBRATION

The tire change calibration function will be used when replacing the tires. This function will adjust the miscalculation caused by the circumference difference between the old and new tires. If this procedure is not performed when the tires are replaced, the current vehicle position mark may be incorrectly displayed.



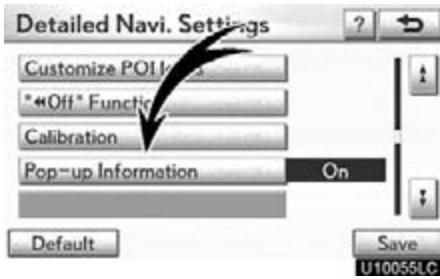
To perform a distance calibration procedure, touch "Tire Change" on the "Calibration" screen.

The message appears and the quick distance calibration is automatically started. A few seconds later, a map will be displayed.

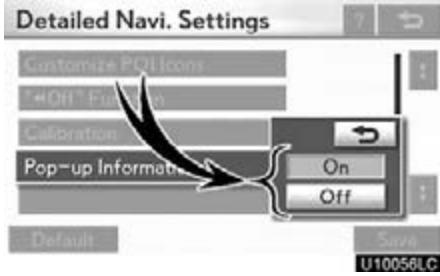
### ● Pop-up information

When the "Pop-up information" is turned on, the pop-up information will be displayed.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Navi." on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Detailed Navi. Settings" on the "Navigation Settings" screen.



4. Touch "Pop-up Information".



5. Touch "On" or "Off".
6. Touch "Save".

## Telephone settings —

“Telephone settings” can be changed on the “Phone settings” screen.

When the “Pop-up Information” is turned off, the following messages will not be displayed.



This message appears when the system is in the POI mode and the map scale is over 0.5 miles (800 m).



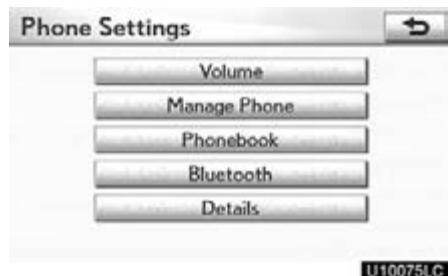
The message appears when the map is switched to the dual map screen mode.



1. Push the “SETUP” button.



2. Touch “Phone”.



Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

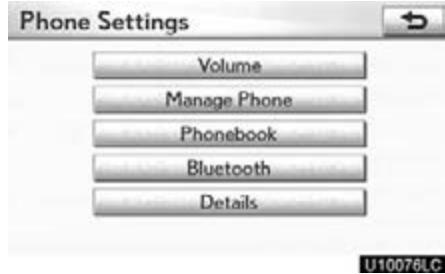
## SETUP

### — Volume setting

You can adjust the voice and ring volume.

- Voice volume setting

1. Touch “Voice Volume”.



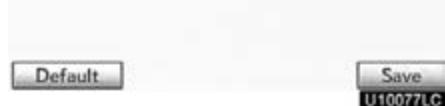
1. Touch “Volume”.

2. Touch “–” or “+” to adjust the voice volume.

3. Touch “OK”.

- Ring volume setting

1. Touch “Ring Volume”.



2. Change each setting according to the following procedures.

3. When you complete all settings, touch “Save”.

#### Automatic volume settings for high speed

The system will automatically increase the volume by one step up when the speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h).



2. Touch “–” or “+” to adjust the ring volume.

3. Touch “OK”.

- Initializing the settings  
You can initialize the settings.

1. Touch “Default”.

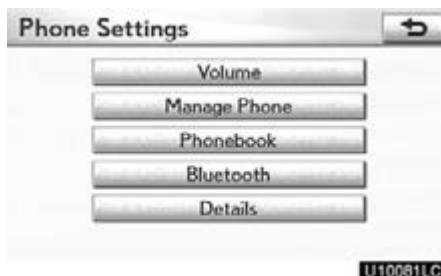


2. Touch “Yes”.

## — Manage phone

“Manage phone” is accessed from the “Connect Phone” screen.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Phone”.



3. Touch “Manage Phone”.



Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

## SETUP

### ● Registering a Bluetooth® phone



1. Touch "(add new)" to register your cellular phone to the system.



2. When this screen is displayed, input the passcode displayed on the screen into the phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, touch "Cancel".

### Connect Bluetooth



3. When the connection is completed, this screen is displayed.

You do not need to enter the phone in case of using the same one.



When this screen is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

When another Bluetooth® device is connected



When another Bluetooth® device is currently connected, this screen is displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".

#### INFORMATION

*When you register your phone, Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish registration. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.*

You can also register a new Bluetooth® phone in the following way.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Phone".
3. Touch "Manage Phone".



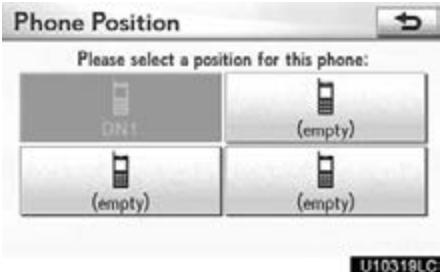
4. Touch "Options".



5. Touch "New Phone".

## SETUP

---



6. Touch "(empty)" to register your cellular phone to the system.

The following operations are the same as the operation after you touch "(add new)".

- Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

In case you register more than one Bluetooth® phone, you need to choose a favorite one.

You can select the Bluetooth® phone from a maximum of 4 numbers.

"(add new)" is displayed when you have not registered a Bluetooth® phone yet.

Although you can register up to 4 Bluetooth® phones in the system, only one Bluetooth® phone can function at a time.



1. Select the phone to connect.

The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the phone.



**2. The “Connect Bluetooth\*” screen is displayed.**

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



**3. When the result message is displayed, you can use the Bluetooth® phone.**

**When you connect the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing**



This screen is displayed, and the Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

**When another Bluetooth® device is connected**



When another Bluetooth® device is currently connected, this screen is displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch “Yes”.

## SETUP

### Setting the handsfree power

You can select the state of “Handsfree Power”.



Changes between “On” and “Off” every time you touch “Handsfree Power”.

For the “Handsfree Power”, see “Changing the handsfree power” on page 381.

### Editing the Bluetooth® phone

You can see the information of the Bluetooth® phone on the system or edit.

#### “Device Name”

.....The name of Bluetooth® phone which is displayed on the screen. You can change it into a desired name.

If you change a device name, the name registered in your cellular phone is not changed.

#### “Device Address”

.....The address peculiar to the system. You cannot change it.

If you have registered two Bluetooth® phones with the same device name and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to it.

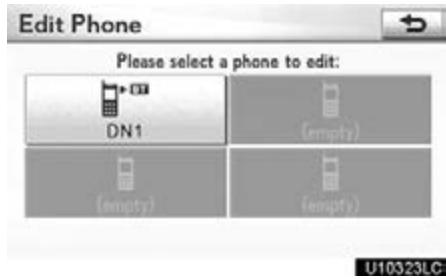


#### 1. Touch “Options”.



#### 2. Touch “Edit Phones”.

## SETUP



3. Select the phone to edit.



4. This screen is displayed.

If you want to change the device name, touch "Edit".



5. Use the software keyboard to input the device name.



6. Confirm the device name and touch "OK".

## SETUP

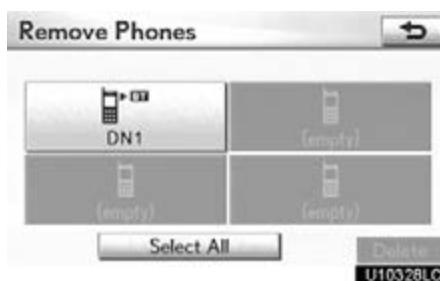
- Deleting a Bluetooth® phone



1. Touch "Options".



2. Touch "Remove Phones".



3. Select the desired phone or touch "Select All", then touch "Delete".

You can select multiple phones and delete them at the same time.



4. Touch "Yes".

### INFORMATION

*When you delete a Bluetooth® phone, the phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.*

## — Phonebook

- By voice recognition



You can operate "Connect Phone" by giving a command.

"Connect Phone" includes "Select Phone", "Add New Phone" and "Handsfree Power Off" (On).

The operating procedure is similar to other voice recognition. (For the operation of voice recognition, see "Voice command system" on page 44.)

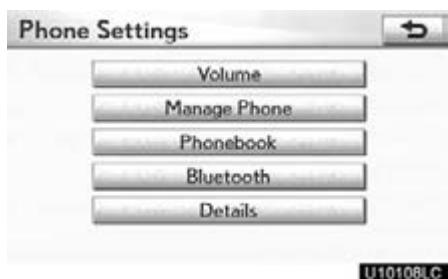
When you select the command of "Add New Phone", you must carry out the following operation on the screen.

### INFORMATION

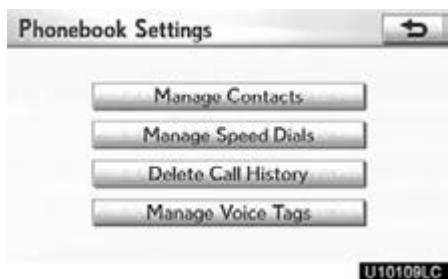
*Phonebook data is managed for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you can not read the registered data.*

"Phonebook" is accessed from the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Phone".



3. Touch "Phonebook".



Please do each setting from this screen.

## **SETUP**

---

### **— Setting the phonebook**

“Setting the phonebook” is accessed from the “Contacts” screen.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Phone”.
3. Touch “Phonebook”.



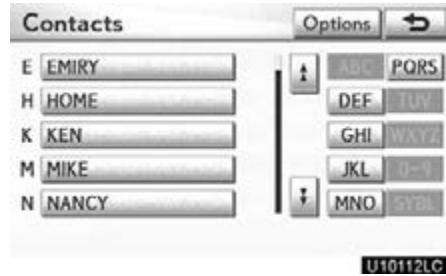
4. Touch “Manage Contacts”.



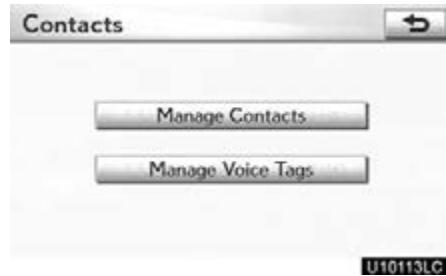
Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

You can also display the “Contacts” screen in the following way.

1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.
2. Touch “Phone”.
3. Touch “Contacts”.



4. Touch “Options”.



5. Touch “Manage Contacts”.

- Transferring a phone number

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system. The phonebook manages a maximum of 4 phonebooks in all. The data for 1000 contacts (up to 3 numbers per contact) can be registered in total of phonebooks.

Transfer it while the engine is running.



1. Touch "Transfer Contacts".



2. Touch "Replace Contacts" or "Add Contacts".

In case that the phonebook contains phonebook data, this screen is displayed.



3. Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

This screen appears while transferring. To cancel it, touch "Cancel". If the transferring is interrupted on the way, the phonebook data transferred until then can be memorized in the system.

**When you have touched "Replace Contacts":**

If your cellular phone does not support PBAP or OPP service, you can not use this function.

If your phone supports PBAP service, you can transfer the phonebook data without operating your phone.

If your phone does not support PBAP service, you must transfer the phonebook data by operating your phone.

**When you have touched "Add Contacts":**

If your cellular phone does not support OPP service, you can not use this function.

You can transfer the phonebook data only by operating your phone.

## SETUP

---



4. In case that you have touched "Add Contacts", this screen is displayed.

If you want to transfer another phonebook, touch "Yes".

When another Bluetooth® device is connected



When another Bluetooth® device is currently connected, this screen is displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".

### INFORMATION

*Bluetooth® audio will disconnect during transfer on phonebook data. In this case, it will reconnect automatically when data transfer finishes. (It will not be reconnected depending the phone you are using.)*

## SETUP

- Registering the phonebook data

You can register the phonebook data.  
Up to 3 numbers per person can be registered.



1. Touch "New Contact".



2. Use the software keyboard to input the name and touch "OK".



3. Input the phone number and touch "OK".

If you want to use the tone signal after the phone number, input the tone signal too.



4. Select the phone type.

## SETUP

---



5. When two or less numbers in total are registered to this contact, this screen is displayed.

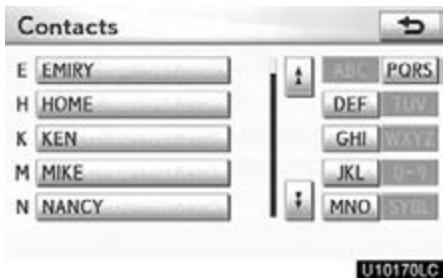
When you want to add a number to this contact, touch "Yes".

- Editing the phonebook data

You can register the phone number in "Phone#1", "Phone#2" and "Phone#3" separately.



1. Touch "Edit Contacts".



2. Select the data you want to edit.

## SETUP

---

The screen shows the "Edit Contact" interface. It has four input fields: "Name: EMIRY", "Phone # 1: 1234567890", "Phone # 2:", and "Phone # 3:". Each field has an "Edit" button to its right. Below the fields is a "Save" button, and at the bottom is a footer with the code "U10127LC".

You can also display the "Edit Contact" screen in the following ways.

From "Contact Data" screen

1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.
2. Touch "Phone".
3. Touch "Contacts".
4. Select the desired data from the list.

The screen shows the "Contact Data" interface. It displays a single contact entry for "EMIRY" with the phone number "1234567890". At the bottom is a footer with the code "U10128LC".

5. Touch "Options".

The screen shows the "Contact Data" interface with the "Options" menu open. The visible options are "Edit Contact", "Delete Contact", "Set Speed Dial", and "Set Voice Tag". At the bottom is a footer with the code "U10129LC".

6. Touch "Edit Contact".

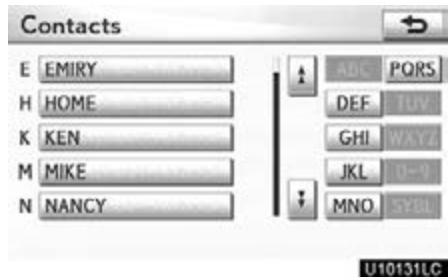
## SETUP

### From "Call History" screen

1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.
2. Touch "Phone".
3. Touch "Call History".
4. Select the desired number from the list.



5. Touch "Add Contact" or "Update Contact".



6. In case that you have touched "Update Contact", this screen is displayed.  
Select the desired data from the list.

### ● Deleting the phonebook data

You can delete the data.

When you release your car, delete all your data on the system.



1. Touch "Delete Contacts".



2. Select the desired data or touch "Select All", then touch "Delete".

You can touch multiple data and delete them at the same time.

---

## SETUP

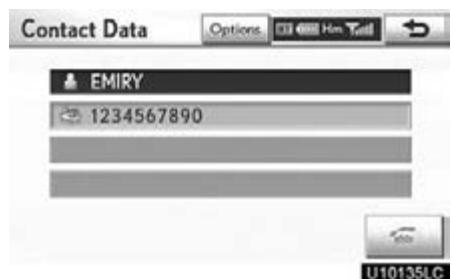
---



3. Touch "Yes".

You can also delete it in the following way.

1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.
2. Touch "Phone".
3. Touch "Contacts".
4. Select the desired data from the list.



5. Touch "Options".



6. Touch "Delete Contact".

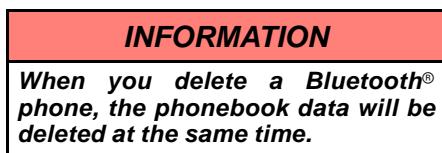
## SETUP

---

### — Speed dials setting



7. Touch "Yes".



"Speed dials setting" is accessed from the "Speed Dials" screen.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Phone".
3. Touch "Phonebook".



4. Touch "Manage Speed Dials".



Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

## SETUP

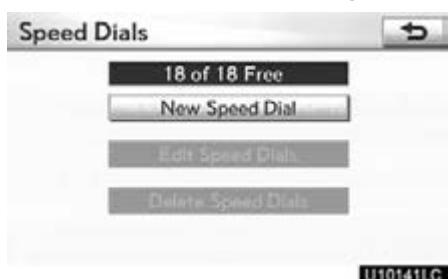
You can also display the “Speed Dials” screen in the following way.

1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.
2. Touch “Phone”.
3. Touch “Speed Dials”.

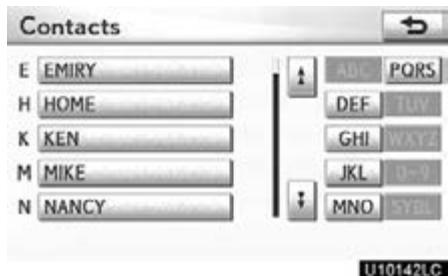


- Registering the speed dial

You can register the desired phone number from phonebook. Up to 18 numbers per phone can be registered.

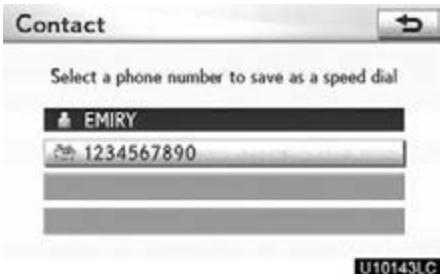


1. Touch “New Speed Dial”.

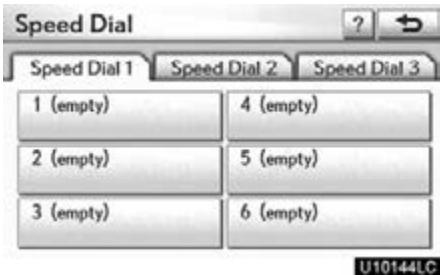


2. Select the data you want to register.

## SETUP



3. Touch the desired phone number.



4. Touch the touch-screen button you want to register in.



5. If you select a touch-screen button you registered before, this screen is displayed.

Touch "Yes" if you want to replace it.



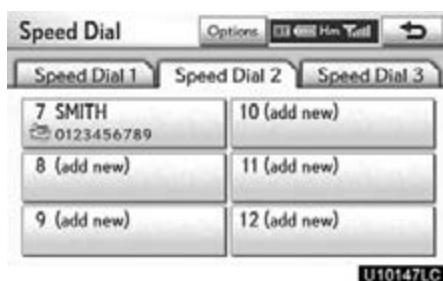
6. When this screen is displayed, the operation is complete.

## SETUP

You can also register the speed dial in the following ways.

From “Speed Dial” screen

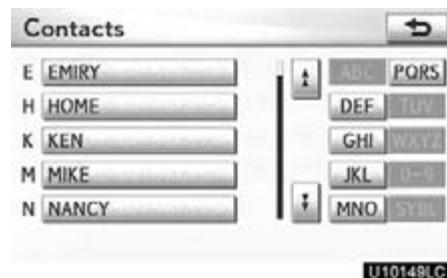
1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.
2. Touch “Phone”.
3. Touch “Speed Dials”.



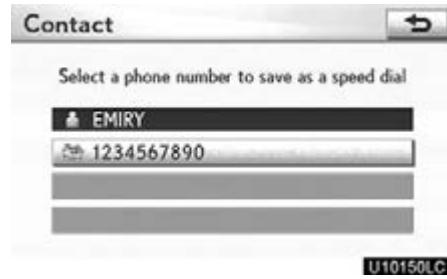
4. Touch “(add new)”.



5. Touch “Yes” to set new speed dial.



6. Select the data you want to register.



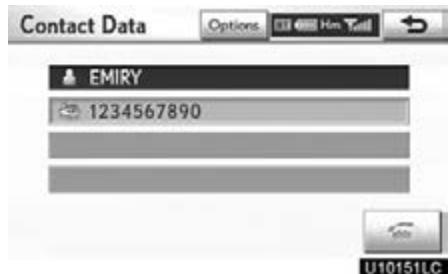
7. Touch the desired phone number.

## **SETUP**

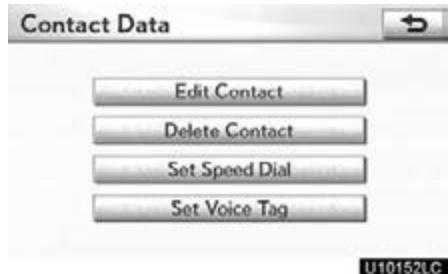
---

### **From “Contact Data” screen**

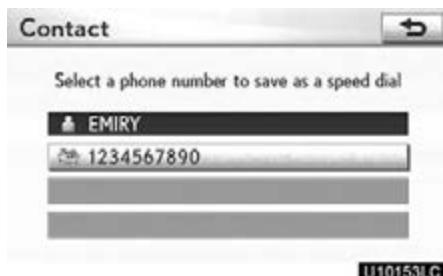
- 1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.**
- 2. Touch “Phone”.**
- 3. Touch “Contacts”.**
- 4. Select the desired data from the list.**



- 5. Touch “Options”.**



- 6. Touch “Set Speed Dial”.**



- 7. This screen is displayed.  
The following operations are the same  
as the operation when you operate it  
from the “SETUP” button.**

● **Editing the speed dial**

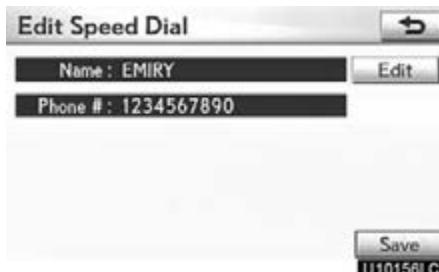
You can edit the speed dial.



1. Touch “Edit Speed Dials”.



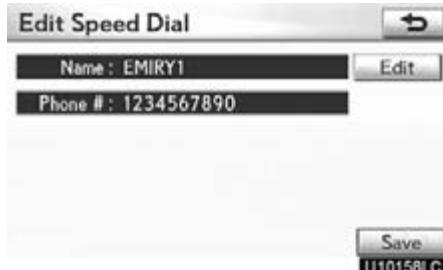
2. Touch the touch-screen button you want to edit.



3. Touch “Edit”.



4. Use the software keyboard to input the name.



5. Touch “Save”.

## SETUP

### ● Deleting the speed dial

You can delete the speed dial.



3. Touch "Yes".

1. Touch "Delete Speed Dials".



2. Select the desired data or touch  
"Select All", then touch "Delete".

You can select multiple data and delete  
them at the same time.

## — Deleting call history

You can delete the call history.



1. Touch “Delete Call History”.

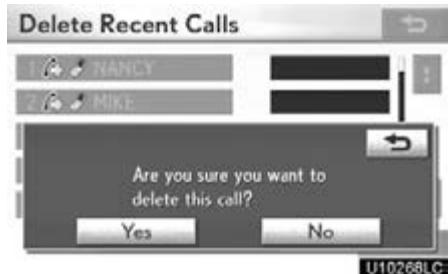


2. Select the desired history to delete.



3. Select the desired data or touch “Select All”, then touch “Delete”.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.



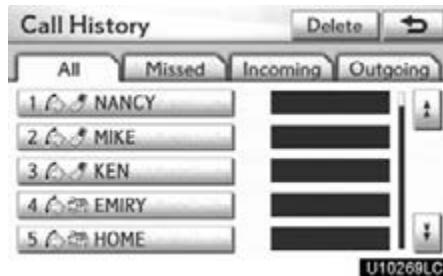
4. Touch “Yes”.

## **SETUP**

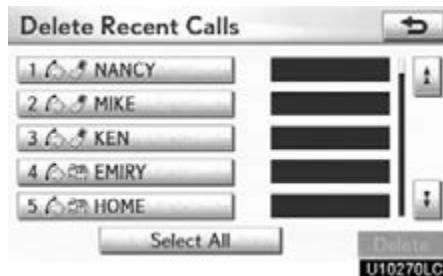
### **— Setting the voice tag**

You can also delete the call history in the following way.

1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.
2. Touch “Phone”.
3. Touch “Call History”.



4. Touch “Delete”.



5. This screen is displayed.

The following operations are the same as the operation when you operate it from the “SETUP” button.

You can similarly operate other call history.

“Setting the voice tag” is done by displaying “Voice Tags” screen.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Phone”.
3. Touch “Phonebook”.



4. Touch “Manage Voice Tags”.



Please refer to the following pages for each setting.

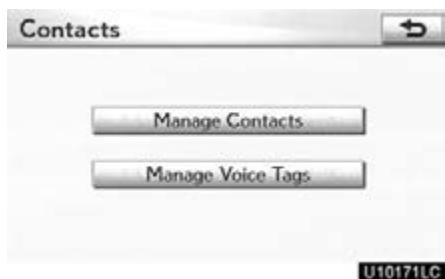
## SETUP

You can also display "Voice Tags" screen in the following way.

1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.
2. Touch "Phone".
3. Touch "Contacts".



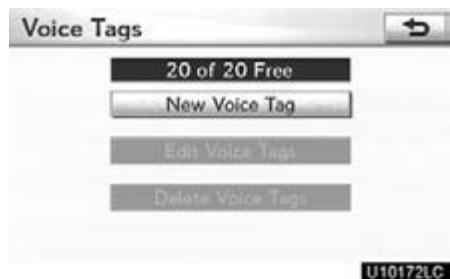
4. Touch "Options".



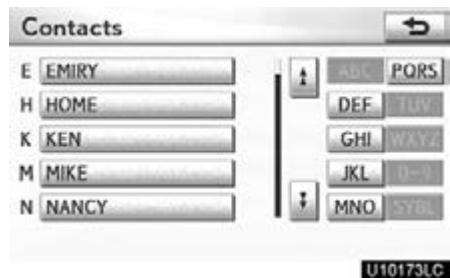
5. Touch "Manage Voice Tags".

- Registering the voice tag

You can register a voice tag for up to 20 numbers.



1. Touch "New Voice Tag".



2. Select the data you want to register.

## SETUP



3. Touch “● REC”, and record a voice tag.

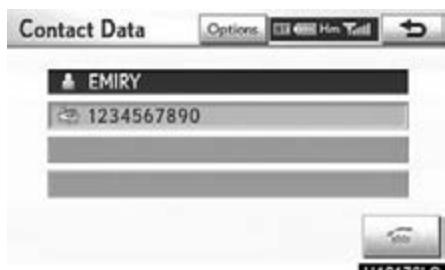


4. Touch “▶ Play” to play the voice tag.

When you complete the voice tag registration, touch “OK”.

You can also register the voice tag in the following way.

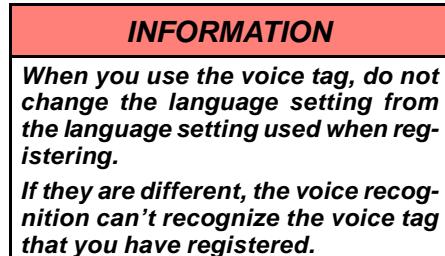
1. Push the “INFO/PHONE” button.
2. Touch “Phone”.
3. Touch “Contacts”.
4. Select the desired data from the list.



5. Touch “Options”.



6. Touch “Set Voice Tag”.



## SETUP



**7. This screen is displayed.**

The following operations are the same as the operation when you operate it from the "SETUP" button.

● **Editing the voice tag**



**1. Touch "Edit Voice Tags".**



**2. Select the data you want to edit.**



**3. This screen is displayed.**

The following operations are the same as the operation when you register the voice tag.

## SETUP

### — Bluetooth®

- Deleting the voice tag



1. Touch "Delete Voice Tags".



2. Select the desired data or touch "Select All", then touch "Delete".

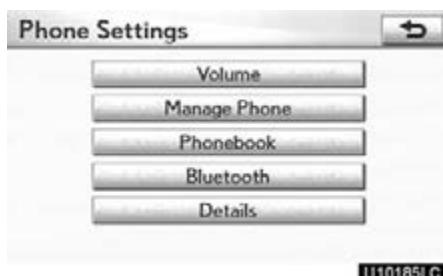
You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.



3. Touch "Yes".

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Phone".



3. Touch "Bluetooth\*".

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



4. This screen is displayed.

The information displays the following items.

**“Device Name”**

..... The name in the Bluetooth® network. You can change it.

**“Passcode”**

..... The passcode when you used to register your cellular phone in the system. You can change it.

**“Device Address”**

..... The address peculiar to the system. You can not change it. If the same device name is displayed on the screen of your phone, refer to it.

**If you want to change the settings, refer to the following pages.**

**When you change the settings, touch “Save” after changing them.**

● **Changing the Bluetooth® settings**

**You can change the Bluetooth® settings according to the following procedures.**

**Changing the handsfree power**

**The “Handsfree Power” display shows the following state.**

When “Handsfree Power” is “On”:

The Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when you turn the ignition to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

When “Handsfree Power” is “Off”:

The Bluetooth® phone is disconnected, and the system will not connect to it next time.

**You can select the state of “Handsfree Power”.**

**On: The auto connection is turned on.**

**Off: The auto connection is turned off.**

You can not change the state from “On” into “Off” while driving.

## SETUP



1. Touch "Handsfree Power".



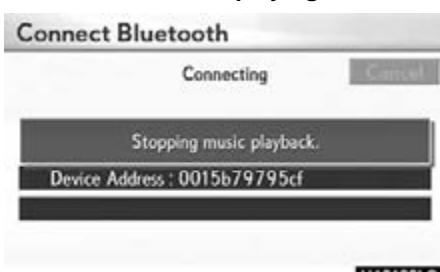
2. Touch "On" or "Off".



3. Touch "Save".

In case that "Handsfree Power" is changed from "Off" into "On", Bluetooth® connection will begin.

When you connect the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing



This screen is displayed, and the Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

**Editing the device name**

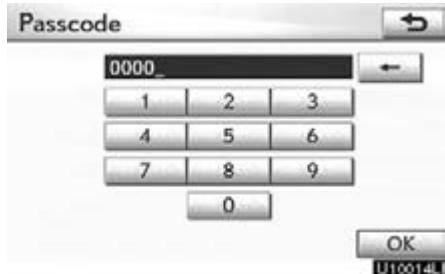
1. Touch "Edit" of "Device Name".



2. Use the software keyboard to input the device name.

**Editing the passcode**

1. Touch "Edit" of "Passcode".



2. Input a passcode and touch "OK".

**INFORMATION**

*The device names are common Bluetooth® audio and Bluetooth® phone.*

*If you change the device name of the phone, the device name of the audio will change at same time.*

*However, passcodes can be set separately.*

## SETUP

- Initializing the Bluetooth® settings  
You can initialize the settings.



1. Touch "Default".



2. Touch "Yes".

If "Handsfree Power" is changed from "Off" into "On", Bluetooth® connection will begin.

If you connect a phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

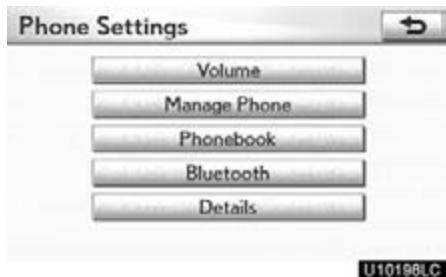


This screen is displayed, and the Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.

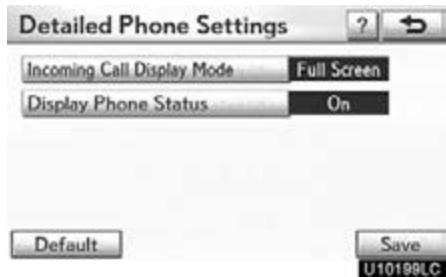
## — Details

You can do the detail settings.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Phone”.



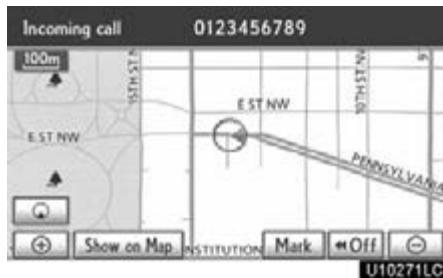
3. Touch “Details”.



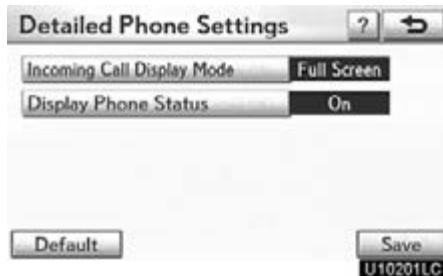
4. Do each setting according to the following procedures.

5. When you complete each setting, touch “Save”.

- Incoming call display



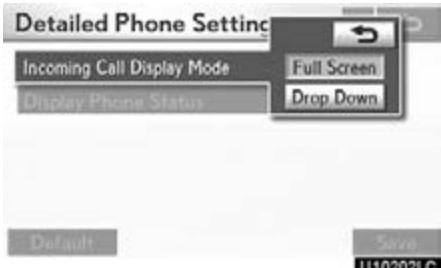
You can select the method of the incoming call display.



1. Touch “Incoming Call Display Mode”.

## SETUP

---



2. Touch "Full Screen" or "Drop Down".

### "Full Screen" mode

..... When a call is received, the Hands-free screen is displayed and you can operate it on the screen.

### "Drop Down" mode

..... The message is displayed on the upper side of the screen. You can only operate the steering switch.

- The Bluetooth® connection status at start up



When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the Bluetooth® is automatically connected, the connection check is displayed.

When "Display Phone Status" is "On", this status is displayed.

When "Display Phone Status" is "Off", this status is not displayed.

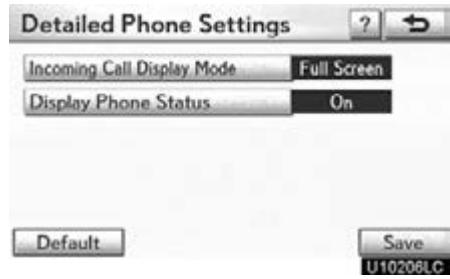


1. Touch "Display Phone Status".



2. Touch "On" or "Off".

- Initializing the settings  
You can initialize the settings.



1. Touch "Default".



2. Touch "Yes".

## SETUP

### Audio settings —

#### — Select portable player

The portable player to connect can be selected. The registered audio information can be confirmed and edited.

- Selecting a portable player

If you register a second portable player, either one can be selected for connection.



1. Push the "SETUP" button.



2. Touch "Audio" on "Setup" screen.



3. Touch "Select Portable Player" on "Audio Settings" screen.

You can select from a maximum of two Bluetooth® portable players.

"Empty" is displayed when you have not registered a portable player yet. The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you choose the portable player.



4. Select desired portable player and then touch "OK".

Although you can register up to two portable players in the system, only one portable player can function at a time.

- **Displaying Bluetooth® information**

You can see or change the information of the portable player on the system.

**“Device Name”**

... The name of Bluetooth® portable player which is displayed on the screen. You can change it into a desired name.

**“Device Address”**

... The address peculiar to the system. You cannot change it. If you have registered two Bluetooth® portable players with the same device name and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to it.

**“Connection Method”**

... The connection method can be switched between “From Vehicle” and “From Portable Player”.



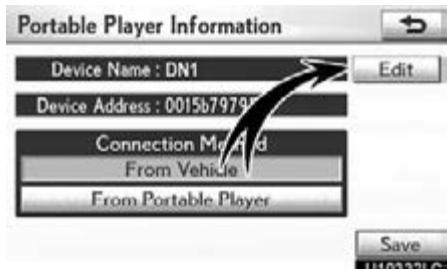
Select the desired portable player and then touch “Portable Player Info”.

- **Changing a device name**

You can change a device name. Even if you change a device name, the name registered in your portable player is not changed.



1. Touch “Portable Player Info” on “Select Portable Player” screen.



2. Touch “Edit” for “Device Name” on “Portable Player Information” screen.



3. Use the software keyboard to input the device name.

## SETUP

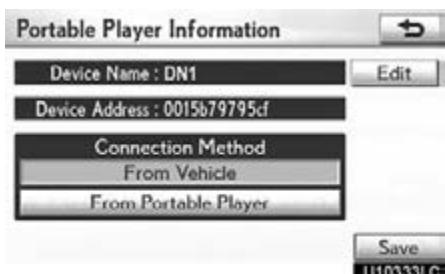
### — Setting Bluetooth® audio

- Selecting Connection method

The connection method can be selected.

**From Vehicle:** Connect the audio system to the portable player.

**From Portable Player:** Connect the portable player to the audio system.



Select desired connection method "From Vehicle" or "From Portable Player" and then touch "Save".



\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

The Bluetooth® audio settings can be set.

- Registering your portable player



1. Touch "Bluetooth\* Audio Settings" on "Audio Settings" screen.



2. Touch "Register" of "Bluetooth\* Audio" on "BT Audio Settings" screen.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



- 3. When this screen is displayed, enter the passcode displayed on the screen into the portable player.**

For the operation of the portable player, see the manual that comes with it.

If you want to cancel the entry, touch “Cancel”.



- 4. When the connection is complete, this screen is displayed.**

You do not need to enter the portable player in case of using the same one.



When this screen is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try connection again.

#### When another Bluetooth® device is connected



When the Bluetooth® device is currently connected, this screen is displayed.

If you want to disconnect it, touch “Yes”.

#### INFORMATION

*If the device corresponds with both Bluetooth® phone and Bluetooth® audio, register and connect the Bluetooth® phone first or a connection failure may occur when registering the Bluetooth® audio.*

## SETUP

### (a) Removing a Bluetooth® audio



1. Touch "Remove" of "Bluetooth\* Audio" on "BT Audio Settings" screen.



If the selected portable player is in use, this screen will appear. Touch "Yes". The system will disconnect the portable player and remove it.



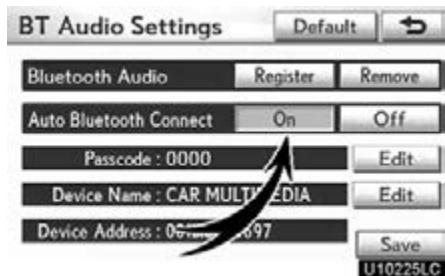
2. Select the portable player you want to delete and touch "OK".



3. Touch "Yes" to unregister the selected portable player.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG.Inc.

**(b) Connecting Bluetooth® audio  
AUTOMATICALLY**



Touch “On” for “Auto Bluetooth\* Connect” to activate the automatic connection for the Bluetooth®. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® portable player in a condition where connection can be established. The “Auto Bluetooth\* Connect” cannot be selected if the connection method is set to “**From Portable Player**”.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the selected portable player will be automatically connected and the connection result is displayed.

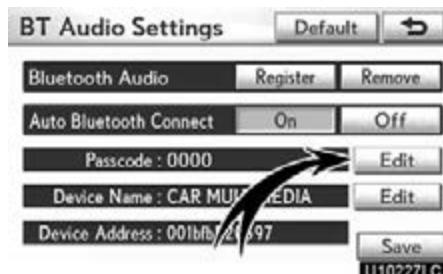
**MANUALLY**

When the auto connection fails or turns off, you have to connect Bluetooth® manually. For the manual operation, see page 248.

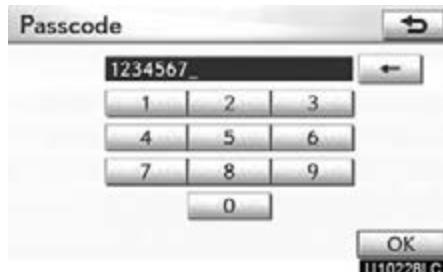
## SETUP

### (c) Changing the passcode

The passcode for registering your portable player on the system can be changed. You can change this to a 4 to 8 digit number of your choice. The default is "0000".



1. Touch "Edit" of "Passcode" on "BT Audio Settings" screen.

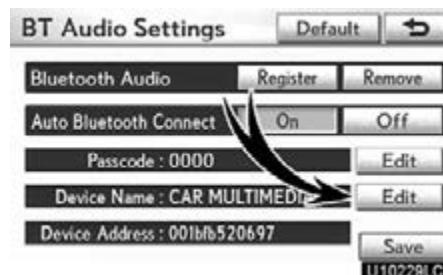


2. Enter the new 4–8 digits passcode and touch "OK".

Each time you touch , an input digit is deleted.

### (d) Changing the device name

You can change a device name. Even if you change a device name, the name registered in your portable player is not changed.



1. Touch "Edit" of "Device Name" on "BT Audio Settings" screen.



2. Enter the new device name and touch "OK".

### INFORMATION

*The device names are common to Bluetooth® audio and Bluetooth® phone.*

*If you change the device name of the audio, the device name of the phone will change at same time.*

*However, passcodes can be set separately.*

## Vehicle settings — — Maintenance

**(e) Initializing the Bluetooth® audio settings**

You can initialize the settings.



1. Touch "Default" on "BT Audio Settings" screen.

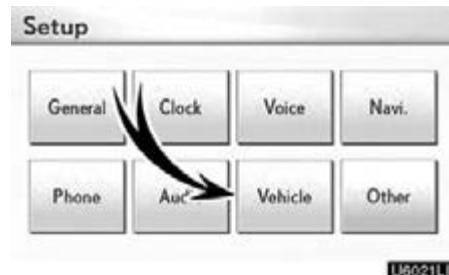


2. Touch "Yes".

When the navigation system is turned on, the "Information" screen displays when it is time to replace a part or certain components. (See page 27.)



1. Push the "SETUP" button.



2. Touch "Vehicle".



3. Touch "Maintenance".

## SETUP



- Setting maintenance information (See page 396.)
- Setting dealer (See page 398.)

### (a) Maintenance information setting

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.
3. Touch "Maintenance" on the "Vehicle Settings" screen.



#### 4. Touch the desired button.

For details of each button, see "INFORMATION ITEMS" on page 397.

**"Delete All":** To cancel all conditions which have been inputted.

**"Reset All":** To reset the item which has satisfied a condition.

**"Set Dealer":** To register dealer information. (See "(b) Dealer setting" on page 398.)

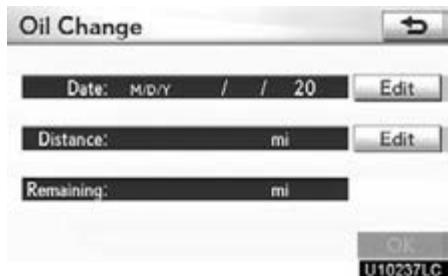
**"Dealer Info.":** To edit dealer information. (See "(b) Dealer setting" on page 398.)

**"Reminder":** When this button is touched, the indicator is illuminated. The system is set to give maintenance information with the "Information" screen. (See page 27.)

When the vehicle needs to be serviced, the button color will change to orange.

**INFORMATION ITEMS**

- “**Engine oil**”: Replace engine oil
- “**Oil filter**”: Replace engine oil filter
- “**Rotation**”: Rotate tires
- “**Tires**”: Replace tires
- “**Battery**”: Replace battery
- “**Brake pad**”: Replace brake linings
- “**Wipers**”: Replace wiper blades
- “**Coolant**”: Replace engine coolant
- “**Brake oil**”: Replace brake fluid
- “**Trans. fluid**”: Replace transmission fluid
- “**Service**”: Scheduled maintenance
- “**Air filter**”: Replace air filter
- “**Personal**”: New information items can be created separately from provided ones.

**5. Input the conditions.**

“**Date**”: The next maintenance date can be input.

“**Distance**”: The driving distance until the next maintenance check can be input.

“**Delete**”: To cancel the date and distance conditions.

“**Reset**”: To reset the date and distance conditions.

**6. Touch “OK”.**

The screen then returns to the “Maintenance” screen.

**INFORMATION**

- *For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Warranty and Services Guide/Owner’s Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance”.*
- *Depending on driving or road conditions, the actual date and distance may differ from the stored date and distance in the system.*

## SETUP

### (b) Dealer setting

It is possible to register a dealer in the system. With dealer information registered, route guidance to the dealer is available.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “Maintenance” on the “Vehicle Settings” screen.

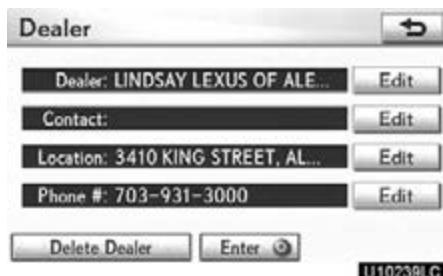


4. Touch “Set Dealer”.



5. If the dealer has not been registered, enter the location of the dealer in the same way as for a destination search. (See “Destination search” on page 62.)

When “Set Dealer” registration is finished, the “Dealer” screen will be displayed.



6. Touch “Edit” for the item you want to change.

“Dealer”: To enter the name of a dealer. (See page 399.)

“Contact”: To enter the name of a dealer member. (See page 399.)

“Location”: To set a location. (See page 399.)

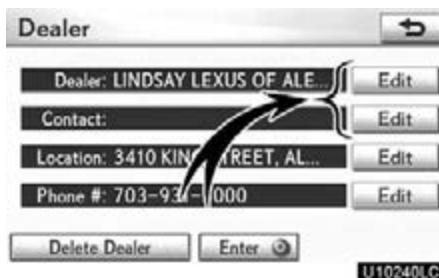
“Phone #”: To set a telephone number. (See page 400.)

“Delete Dealer”: To delete the dealer information displayed on the screen.

“Enter (○)": To set the displayed dealer as a destination. (See “Starting route guidance” on page 83.)

## SETUP

- To edit “Dealer” or “Contact”



1. Touch “Edit” of “Dealer” or “Contact”.



2. Enter the name using the alphanumeric keys.

Up to 32 characters can be entered.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

- To edit “Location”



1. Touch “Edit” of “Location”.



2. Touch the 8 directional button to move the cursor to the desired point on the map.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

## **SETUP**

- To edit “Phone #”  
(telephone number)



1. Touch “Edit” of “Phone #”.



2. Enter the number using number keys.

3. Touch “OK”.

The previous screen will be displayed.

### **— Vehicle customization**

Vehicle settings can be changed.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.



3. Touch “Vehicle Customization”.



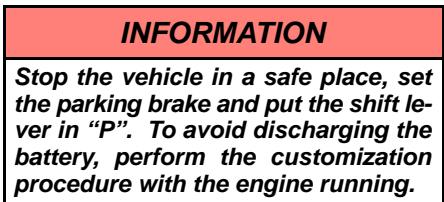
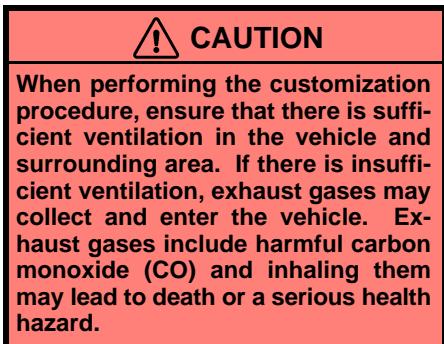
4. Select the setting to be changed.

Various settings can be changed. For a list of the settings that can be changed, see the vehicle owner’s manual.

5. After changing the settings, touch “Save”.

A message indicating that the settings are being saved will appear. Do not perform any other operations while this message is displayed.

## — Intuitive parking assist setting



The volume of the beeps and turning on or off of the display can be set.

1. Push the "SETUP" button.
2. Touch "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.



3. Touch "LEXUS Park Assist".



4. Touch the desired button.
5. Touch "Save".

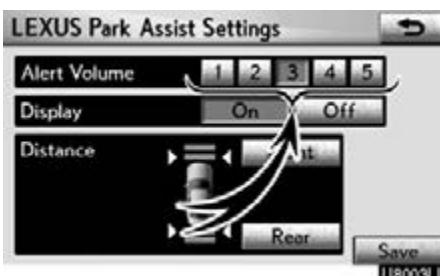
## **SETUP**

---

- **Setting an alert volume**

The alert volume can be adjusted.

1. Push the “**SETUP**” button.
2. Touch “**Vehicle**” on the “**Setup**” screen.
3. Touch “**LEXUS Park Assist**” on the “**Vehicle Settings**” screen.



4. Touch the desired button.

The volume has 5 levels, increasing with higher value or decreasing with lower value.

5. Touch “**Save**”.

- **Setting a parking sonar display**

“**On**” or “**Off**” can be selected for parking sonar display.

1. Push the “**SETUP**” button.
2. Touch “**Vehicle**” on the “**Setup**” screen.
3. Touch “**LEXUS Park Assist**” on the “**Vehicle Settings**” screen.



4. Touch the desired button.

5. Touch “**Save**”.

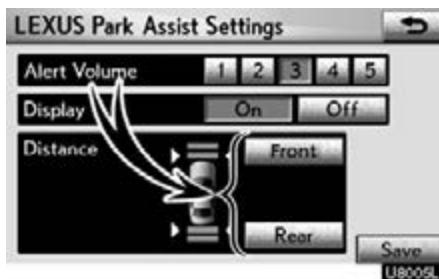
Although “**Off**” is selected, if the obstacle is detected while using rear view monitor system or wide view front & side monitor, the warning appears on the screen.

## Other settings

- Setting a display and tone indication

Front and back sensors display and tone indication can be set.

1. Push the “SETUP” button.
2. Touch “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.
3. Touch “LEXUS Park Assist” on the “Vehicle Settings” screen.



4. Touch “Front” or “Rear”.

Selecting “Front” or “Rear” to switch the distance for the front or back sensors display and tone indication, from long distance to short distance, or from short distance to long distance.

5. Touch “Save”.

Used for changing settings for Lexus Insider and XM® Sports and Stocks.



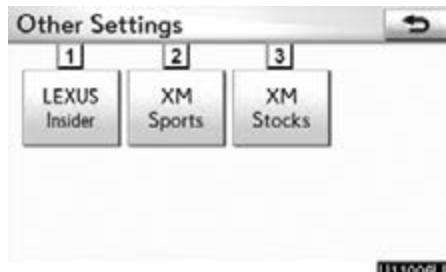
1. Push the “SETUP” button.



2. Touch “Other”.

## **SETUP**

---



On this screen, the following functions can be performed.

No.	Function
[1]	Sets Lexus Insider (See page 175.)
[2]	Sets XM sports (See page 164.)
[3]	Sets XM stocks (See page 166.)

**APPENDIX**

***SECTION 12***

- Limitations of the navigation system ..... 406
- Map database information and updates ..... 408

## APPENDIX

### Limitations of the navigation system

This navigation system calculates the current vehicle position using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, map data, etc. However, the accurate position may not be shown depending on the satellite condition, road configuration, vehicle condition or other circumstances.

The Global Positioning System (GPS) developed and operated by the U.S. Department of Defense provides an accurate current vehicle position, normally using 4 or more satellites, and in some case 3 satellites. The GPS system has a certain level of inaccuracy. While the navigation system will compensate for this most of the time, occasional positioning errors of up to 300 feet (100 m) can and should be expected. Generally, position errors will be corrected within a few seconds.



When your vehicle is receiving signals from the satellites, the "GPS" mark appears at the top left of the screen.

The GPS signal may be physically obstructed, leading to inaccurate vehicle position on the map display. Tunnels, tall buildings, trucks, or even the placement of objects on the instrument panel may obstruct the GPS signals.

The GPS satellites may not send signals due to repairs or improvements being made to them.

Even when the navigation system is receiving clear GPS signals, the vehicle position may not be shown accurately or inappropriate route guidance may occur in some cases.

#### NOTICE

*The installation of window tinting may obstruct the GPS signals. Most window tinting contains some metallic content that will interfere with GPS signal reception of the antenna in the instrument panel. We advise against the use of window tinting on vehicles equipped with navigation systems.*

**(a) Accurate current vehicle position may not be shown in the following cases:**

- When driving on a small angled Y-shaped road.
- When driving on a winding road.
- When driving on a slippery road such as in sand, gravel, snow, etc.
- When driving on a long straight road.
- When motorway and surface streets run in parallel.
- After moving by ferry or vehicle carrier.
- When a long route is searched during high speed driving.
- When driving without setting the current position calibration correctly.
- After repeating a change of direction by going forward and backward, or turning on a turntable in the parking lot.
- When leaving a covered parking lot or parking garage.
- When a roof carrier is installed.
- When driving with tire chains installed.
- When the tires are worn.
- After replacing a tire or tires.
- When using tires that are smaller or larger than the factory specifications.
- When the tire pressure in any of the four tires is not correct.

**(b) Inappropriate route guidance may occur in the following cases:**

- When turning at an intersection off the designated route guidance.
- If you set more than one destination but skip any of them, auto reroute will display a route returning to the destination on the previous route.
- When turning at an intersection for which there is no route guidance.
- When passing through an intersection for which there is no route guidance.
- During auto reroute, the route guidance may not be available for the next turn to the right or left.
- It may take a long time to operate auto reroute during high speed driving. In auto reroute, a detour route may be shown.
- After auto reroute, the route may not be changed.
- An unnecessary U-turn may be shown or announced.
- A location may have multiple names and the system will announce one or more.
- Some routes may not be searched.
- If the route to your destination includes gravel, unpaved roads or alleys, the route guidance may not be shown.
- Your destination point might be shown on the opposite side of the street.
- When a portion of the route has regulations prohibiting the entry of the vehicle that vary by time or season or other reasons.
- The road and map data stored in your navigation system may not be complete or may not be the latest version.

**INFORMATION**

*If your vehicle cannot receive GPS signals, you can correct the current position manually. For information on setting the current position calibration, see page 346.*

## **APPENDIX**

---

### **Map database information and updates**

**After replacing a tire, implement the operation described in the "TIRE CHANGE CALIBRATION". (See page 348.)**

This navigation system uses tire turning data and is designed to work with factory-specified tires for your vehicle. Installing tires that are larger or smaller than the originally equipped diameter may cause inaccurate display of the vehicle's position. The tire pressure also affects the diameter of the tires so please make sure the tire pressure of all four tires is correct.

**This system uses the maps of DENSO.**

© 2012 DENSO CORPORATION

© 2010 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

© 2010 Tele Atlas North America, Inc. All rights reserved. This material is proprietary and the subject of copyright protection and other intellectual property rights owned by or licensed to Tele Atlas North America, Inc. The use of this material is subject to the terms of a license agreement. You will be held liable for any unauthorized copying or disclosure of this material.

Data by Infogroup Copyright © 2010, All Rights Reserved.

© 2010 VISA Corporation

Copyright © CoStar Realty Information, Inc.

The Bullseye Design is a registered trademark of Target Brands, Inc.

The building footprints and related cartographic information in this product comes with MAPMASTER digital materials.

**END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT**

PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

THIS IS A LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR YOUR COPY OF THE SPATIAL MAP DATABASE, INCLUDING LOCATION CODES AND RELATED PRODUCTS (COLLECTIVELY, THE "DATABASE"), USED IN THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM. BY USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM AND THE DATABASE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ALL TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH BELOW.

**LICENSE GRANT**

DENSO CORPORATION ("DENSO"), as a licensed distributor of the DATABASE, grants to you a non-exclusive, non-perpetual license to use your copy of the DATABASE for your personal use or for your use in your business' internal operations and not for any other purpose. This license does not include the right to grant sub-licenses.

**OWNERSHIP**

The DATABASE and the copyrights and intellectual property and neighboring rights therein are owned by Tele Atlas North America, Inc. ("TANA") and its licensors. This Agreement does not transfer any title or interest in the DATABASE, except for the license to use the DATABASE according and subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement. You shall not alter, obscure or remove any copyright notices, trademark notices or other restrictive legends relating to the DATABASE.

The DATABASE comprises confidential and proprietary information and materials of TANA. Accordingly, you shall hold the DATABASE in confidence and trust. You shall take reasonable steps to protect the DATABASE from misappropriation or misuse. You shall not extract stand-alone data from or publish any part of the DATABASE without the prior written consent of TANA and its licensors.

**LIMITATIONS ON USE**

The DATABASE is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws, you may not extract or reutilize any portion of the contents of the DATABASE, nor reproduce, copy, duplicate, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the DATABASE.

**TRANSFER**

You may not transfer the DATABASE to third parties, except together with the system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the DATABASE, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this AGREEMENT.

## **APPENDIX**

---

### **DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY**

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS" AND DENSO AND TANA (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY DENSO OR TANA (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

### **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY**

IN NO EVENT SHALL DENSO OR TANA (OR THEIR LICENSORS OR SUPPLIERS) BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT OR YOUR USE OF THE DATABASE, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR COSTS OF COVER, LOSS OF USE OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE, REGARDLESS OF WHETHER THE PARTY WAS ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

IN NO EVENT WILL THE TOTAL LIABILITY OF DENSO OR TANA (OR THEIR LICENSORS OR SUPPLIERS) EXCEED THE AMOUNTS PAID BY YOU FOR THE DATABASE.

### **WARNINGS**

The DATABASE comprises facts and information from government and other sources reflecting circumstances in existence before you received the DATABASE, which may contain errors and omissions. Accordingly, the DATABASE may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, and due to the nature of the sources used. The DATABASE does not include or reflect information relating to, among other things, neighborhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; vehicle or speed restrictions; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road or traffic conditions; special events; traffic congestion; or travel time.

**U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS**

If you are an agency, department, or other entity of the United States Government, or funded in whole or in part by the United States Government, then use, duplication, reproduction, release, modification, disclosure or transfer of this commercial product and accompanying documentation, is restricted in accordance with the LIMITED or RESTRICTED rights as described in DFARS 252.227-7014(a)(1) (JUN 1995) (DOD commercial computer software definition), DFARS 227.7202-1 (DOD policy on commercial computer software), FAR 52.227-19 (JUN 1987) (commercial computer software clause for civilian agencies), DFARS 252.227-7015 (NOV 1995) (DOD technical data – commercial items clause); FAR 52.227-14 Alternates I, II, and III (JUN 1987) (civilian agency technical data and noncommercial computer software clause); and/or FAR 12.211 and FAR 12.212 (commercial item acquisitions), as applicable. In case of conflict between any of the FAR and DFARS provisions listed herein and this Agreement, the construction that provides greater limitations on the Government's rights shall control.

Contractor/manufacturer is Tele Atlas North America, Inc., 11 Lafayette Street, Lebanon, NH 03766-1445. Phone: 603.643.0330. The DATABASE is ©1984–2010 by Tele Atlas North America, Inc. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. For purpose of any public disclosure provision under any federal, state or local law, it is agreed that the DATABASE is a trade secret and a proprietary commercial product and not subject to disclosure.

If you are an agency, department, or other entity of any State government, the United States Government or any other public entity or funded in whole or in part by the United States Government, then you hereby agree to protect the DATABASE from public disclosure and to consider the DATABASE exempt from any statute, law, regulation, or code, including any Sunshine Act, Public Records Act, Freedom of Information Act, or equivalent, which permits public access and/or reproduction or use of the Licensed Products. In the event that such exemption is challenged under any such laws, this Agreement shall be considered breached and any and all right to retain any copies or to use of the DATABASE shall be terminated and considered immediately null and void. Any copies of the DATABASE held by you shall immediately be destroyed. If any court of competent jurisdiction considers this clause void and unenforceable, in whole or in part, for any reason, this Agreement shall be considered terminated and null and void, in its entirety, and any and all copies of the DATABASE shall immediately be destroyed.

## **APPENDIX**

---

### **END USER TERMS**

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and DENSO CORPORATION ("DENSO") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2010 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.  
NAVTEQ holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2010.  
Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

### **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

**Personal Use Only.** You agree to use this Data together with vehicle navigation system for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided by DENSO and not as a subset thereof.

## APPENDIX

---

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by DENSO, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. DENSO and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: DENSO AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: DENSO AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF DENSO OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

## **APPENDIX**

---

Export Control. You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between DENSO (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

### **NOTICE OF USE**

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: NAVTEQ

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS:  
425 West Randolph Street,  
Chicago, Illinois 60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this data was provided.

©2010 NAVTEQ – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify NAVTEQ prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

**END USER NOTICE**

**PLEASE READ THIS NOTICE CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS NAVIGATION SYSTEM**

The Point Of Interest Data (“POI” Data) in the navigation system is in part provided by infogroup Inc. (“infogroup”). By using the POI Data, you accept and agree to all terms and conditions set forth below.

**1. Ownership**

All rights, title and interest to the infogroup POI Data shall be retained by infogroup.

**2. Limitations on use**

Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws, you may not extract or reutilize any portion of the contents of the POI Data, nor reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the POI Data.

**3. Transfer**

You may not transfer the POI Data to third parties, except together with the system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the POI Data.

**4. Disclaimer of warranty**

EXCEPT AS STATED HEREIN, INFOGROUP MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY.

**5. Limitation of liability**

EITHER INFOGROUP OR SUPPLIER OF POI DATA SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES MADE OR ALLEGED IN CONNECTION WITH YOUR USE OF THE POI DATA.

**END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT**

Personal Use Only. You agree to use this information for solely personal, non-commercial purposes, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. You may not modify the information or remove any copyright notices that appear on the information in any way. You may not decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this information, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose. Without limiting the foregoing, you may not use this information with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications.

No Warranty. This information is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. DENSO and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers, collectively “DENSO”) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, and DENSO expressly disclaims any warranties regarding content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, non-infringement, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this information, or that the information or server will be uninterrupted or error-free. Some states, territories and countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent, the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## APPENDIX

---

**Disclaimer of Liability:** DENSO SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF ITS NATURE, ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, WHETHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE OR CONTRACTS ARISING OUT OF YOUR POSSESSION, USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF DENSO OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some states, territories and countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Indemnity.** You agree to indemnify, defend and hold DENSO and its licensors (including their respective licensors, suppliers, assignees, subsidiaries, affiliated companies, and the respective officers, directors, employees, shareholders, agents and representatives of each of them) free and harmless from and against any liability, loss, injury (including injuries resulting in death), demand, action, cost, expense, or claim of any kind or character, including but not limited to attorney's fees, arising out of or in connection with any use or possession by you of this information.

### **END USER NOTICE**

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

**There are two types of areas available for route guidance.** In one type of area, primarily around metropolitan centers, detailed route guidance is available for the entire area. In the other type of area, all roads are displayed on the map but route guidance is limited. The navigation route might lack precision because the data (no right turns, one-way traffic, etc.) is not complete. It is still possible to reach the destination by following the arrow direction and distance as shown on the bottom left of the screen. The arrow points in the direction of the destination. The distance shown is as measured in a straight line from the current vehicle position to the destination area.

In order to provide you with as accurate map information as possible, we are always gathering information such as on road repairs and carrying out on-site investigations. However, the names of roads, streets, facilities, and their locations frequently change. In some places, construction on roads may be in progress. For that reason, information on some areas in this system might be different from the actual location.

The map database is normally updated once a year. Contact your Lexus dealer for information about the availability and pricing of an update.

- To confirm the database version and map coverage area



1. Push the "INFO/PHONE" button.



2. Touch "Map Data".



Make sure the version of the database on this screen.

To display the disc coverage area, touch "Map Data Coverage". Confirm the covered area on the screen.

Contact your Lexus dealer to find out if there is a more recent update released.

- Certification

For vehicles sold in Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device. This Category II radiocommunication device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-310.

L'utilisation de ce dispositif est autorisée seulement aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) il ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur du dispositif doit être prêt à accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique reçu, même si ce brouillage est susceptible de compromettre le fonctionnement du dispositif. Ce dispositif de radiocommunication de catégorie II respecte la norme CNR-310 d'Industrie Canada.

**APPENDIX**

---

---

**INDEX*****INDEX***

For navigation system function, please also refer to the “Navigation system function index” on page 18.

**Idx**

## INDEX

---

### Numbers/Symbols

- ? button ..... 20, 33
- 3 routes selection ..... 85
- 3-ZONE button ..... 298, 302

### A

- A/C button ..... 296, 298
- A/V input port ..... 284
- Activating the wide view
  - front & side monitor ..... 315
- Activation of service ..... 155
- Adding destinations ..... 94
- Address book button ..... 20, 77
- Address book entries ..... 117
- Address book entry information ..... 37
- Address button ..... 20, 65
- Adjusting the air conditioning
  - system settings manually ..... 303
- Adjusting the air outlets ..... 307
- Air conditioning controls ..... 296
- Air flow control buttons ..... 296, 298, 304
- Air intake control button
  - ..... 296, 298, 302, 306
- Air outlets ..... 304
- Alphabet key ..... 28
- AM-FM button ..... 184, 186, 196
- Angle mark ..... 235, 279
- Areas to avoid ..... 122
- Arrow screen ..... 39, 90
- ASL ..... 192
- AUDIO button ..... 184, 186
- Audio button ..... 22
- Audio language ..... 235, 279
- Audio settings ..... 388
- Audio/video remote controls ..... 261
- Auto avoid traffic ..... 173, 343
- AUTO button ..... 296, 298
- Auto start ..... 235
- Automatic air conditioning system ..... 301
- Automatic mode ..... 306
- Automatic sound levelizer ..... 192
- AUX port ..... 195
- AUX-USB button ..... 184, 186

### B

- Bass ..... 193
- Before using the rear seat
  - entertainment system controller ..... 265
- Bluetooth® ..... 130, 349, 380, 388
- Bluetooth® audio operation ..... 245
- Bluetooth® connection status
  - at start up ..... 386
- Brightness ..... 31, 286
- Building information ..... 43

### C

- Calendar ..... 151
- Calendar button ..... 23
- Call by call history ..... 142
- Call by dial ..... 139
- Call by phonebook ..... 140
- Call by POI ..... 145
- Call by speed dial ..... 141
- Call by voice recognition ..... 143, 148
- Call on the Bluetooth® phone ..... 139
- Categories ..... 71
- CAUTION screen ..... 26, 267
- CD button ..... 186
- CD changer operation ..... 206
- Cellular phone ..... 130
- CH-DISC button ..... 184, 186
- Change icon ..... 119
- Change location ..... 121, 126
- Change name ..... 120, 125
- Change phone # ..... 121
- Change size ..... 126
- Changing a portable player name ..... 389
- Changing the angle ..... 235, 279
- Changing the audio format ..... 234, 278
- Changing the audio language ..... 234, 278
- Changing the Bluetooth® audio
  - passcode ..... 394
- Changing the Bluetooth® audio
  - player name ..... 394
- Changing the Bluetooth® settings ..... 381
- Changing the page ..... 233
- Changing the rear seat audio
  - source ..... 267

- Changing the speaker output ..... 268  
 Changing the subtitle language ..... 233, 277  
 Channel category ..... 202  
 Chapter ..... 244  
 City to search ..... 65, 70  
 CLIMATE button ..... 296, 298, 299  
 Clock button ..... 22  
 Clock settings ..... 335  
 Color ..... 31, 286  
 Command list ..... 49, 51  
 Compass mode screen ..... 39, 41  
 Connecting a Bluetooth® phone ..... 136  
 Connecting a USB memory or iPod ..... 254  
 Connecting Bluetooth® audio ..... 393  
 Connecting Bluetooth® audio player ..... 248  
 Consumption ..... 150  
 Contrast ..... 31, 286  
 Coordinates button ..... 20, 82  
 Current position calibration ..... 346  
 Current position display ..... 33  
 Cursor position as a destination ..... 34  
 Cursor position as an address book entry ..... 35
- D**
- Dealer setting ..... 398  
 Defogging the windshield ..... 307  
 Delete destination button ..... 20, 82  
 Delete personal data ..... 334  
 Deletes previous destinations ..... 110  
 Deleting a Bluetooth® phone ..... 358  
 Deleting address book entries ..... 122  
 Deleting areas to avoid ..... 127  
 Deleting call history ..... 375  
 Deleting destinations ..... 82, 95  
 Deleting home ..... 113  
 Deleting preset destinations ..... 116  
 Deleting previous destinations ..... 127  
 Deleting the phonebook data ..... 366  
 Deleting the speed dial ..... 374  
 Deleting the voice tag ..... 380  
 DEST button ..... 10  
 Destination Assist ..... 157  
 Destination assist button ..... 20, 76  
 Destination information ..... 38
- Destination screen ..... 20  
 Destination search ..... 62  
 Destination search by "Address" ..... 65  
 Destination search by "Address Book" ..... 77  
 Destination search by "Coordinates" ..... 82  
 Destination search by "Destination Assist" ..... 76  
 Destination search by "Emergency" ..... 77  
 Destination search by "Intersection & Freeway" ..... 78  
 Destination search by "Map" ..... 81  
 Destination search by "Point of Interest" ..... 69  
 Destination search by "Previous Destinations" ..... 76  
 Destination search by home ..... 64  
 Destination search by preset destinations ..... 64  
 Detailed navigation settings ..... 110, 340  
 Detection range of the sensors ..... 325  
 Detour setting ..... 96  
 Dialing by name ..... 144  
 DISC button ..... 184  
 Disc slot ..... 184, 186  
 DISP button ..... 10  
 Display POI icons ..... 102  
 Displaying portable player information ..... 389  
 Displaying the title and name ..... 203  
 Distance and time to destination ..... 10, 93  
 Download eDestinations ..... 160  
 Driving speeds ..... 342  
 DSP control ..... 192  
 DUAL button ..... 296  
 Dual map screen ..... 39, 41  
 DVD audio controls ..... 230, 273  
 DVD audio discs ..... 226, 270  
 DVD audio settings ..... 229, 275  
 DVD changer operation ..... 220  
 DVD language ..... 235, 279  
 DVD player and DVD video disc information ..... 243  
 DVD setup menu ..... 235, 279  
 DVD video controls ..... 230, 273  
 DVD video discs ..... 226, 243, 244, 270  
 DVD video settings ..... 228, 274

## INDEX

---

### E

- eDestination ..... 160
- Edit "Dealer" or "Contact" name ..... 399
- Edit "Location" ..... 399
- Edit "Phone #" ..... 400
- Edit route ..... 86
- Editing address book entries ..... 118
- Editing area to avoid ..... 124
- Editing home ..... 112
- Editing preset destinations ..... 115
- Editing the Bluetooth® phone ..... 356
- Editing the phonebook data ..... 364
- Editing the speed dial ..... 373
- Editing the voice tag ..... 379
- Eject button ..... 184, 186, 208, 223
- Ejecting discs ..... 208, 223
- Emergency button ..... 20, 77
- Enter a Bluetooth® phone ..... 134
- Estimated arrival time ..... 93
- Estimated travel time ..... 93

### F

- Fan speed ..... 303
- Fan speed control buttons ..... 296, 298, 303
- Foot print map ..... 42
- Foot print map button ..... 10
- Freeway exit information screen ..... 88
- Freeway screen ..... 39
- Fuel consumption ..... 149
- Function menu display
  - screen ..... 184, 186
- Function menu tab ..... 184, 186

### G

- General button ..... 22
- General settings ..... 330
- Go home button ..... 20
- GPS information ..... 406
- GPS mark ..... 10
- Guidance screen for the freeway ..... 89
- Guidance screen on the freeway ..... 39
- Guiding the route ..... 16

### H

- Hands-free system ..... 130
- Heading-up ..... 10, 43
- Headphone jacks ..... 266
- Help ..... 33
- HFP (Hands Free Profile) ..... 130
- Home ..... 12, 17, 64, 111

### I

- If the changer malfunctions ..... 219, 243
- Incoming call display ..... 385
- INFO/PHONE button ..... 10
- Information about the icon ..... 36
- Information screen ..... 23
- Initial screen ..... 26
- Initializing the Bluetooth® audio
  - settings ..... 395
- Initializing the Bluetooth® settings ..... 384
- Initializing the detailed phone
  - settings ..... 387
- Initializing the phone volume
  - settings ..... 350
- Inputting letters and numbers ..... 28
- Inserting discs ..... 206, 220
- Interrupt call ..... 148
- Intersection & freeway button ..... 20, 78
- Intersection guidance screen ..... 39, 89
- Intuitive parking assist ..... 322
- Intuitive parking assist failure
  - warning ..... 327
- Intuitive parking assist setting ..... 401
- iPod operation ..... 253

### L

- Language code ..... 237, 281
- Last 5 cities ..... 67, 73
- Lexus Enform ..... 154
- Lexus Insider ..... 175
- Lexus Insider settings ..... 179
- Limitations of
  - the navigation system ..... 406
- List ..... 29
- List all categories button ..... 71, 74
- List screen operation ..... 28
- Listening to satellite radio ..... 201
- Listening to the radio ..... 196
- LOAD button ..... 184, 186, 206, 221
- Local POI list ..... 104

**M**

- Maintenance ..... 395  
 Maintenance information ..... 27  
 Maintenance information items ..... 397  
 Maintenance information setting ..... 396  
 Manage phone ..... 351  
 Map button ..... 20, 81  
 Map coverage area ..... 417  
 Map data button ..... 23  
 Map database information ..... 408  
 Map database updates ..... 408  
 Map database version ..... 417  
 Map icons ..... 44  
 Map scale ..... 42  
 Map screen ..... 10  
 Map screen operation ..... 33  
 MAP/VOICE button ..... 10, 33, 34  
 Mark button ..... 10  
 Marks shown on DVD video discs ..... 244  
 Memory point names ..... 120  
 Message button ..... 198  
 Micro dust and pollen filter ..... 311  
 Micro dust and pollen filter button ..... 296, 298  
 Microphone ..... 44, 130  
 Mid ..... 193  
 MODE button ..... 304  
 MP3 ..... 214, 271

**N**

- Names of areas to be avoided ..... 125  
 Natural speech information ..... 47  
 Navi. button ..... 22  
 Navigation settings ..... 110, 340  
 North-up ..... 10, 43  
 Number key ..... 28

**O**

- OFF button ..... 296, 298  
 Off function ..... 10  
 Operating a DVD disc ..... 226, 270  
 OPP (Object Push Profile) ..... 130  
 Orientation of the map ..... 43  
 Other settings ..... 403  
 Outside air mode ..... 306  
 Outside rear view mirror defogging ..... 310  
 Outside temperature display ..... 296, 298

**P**

- PAL format ..... 243, 285  
 Parental lock ..... 235, 279  
 Past record ..... 149  
 Pause guidance ..... 101  
 Phone button ..... 22, 23  
 Phonebook ..... 140, 359, 360  
 Playing a Bluetooth® audio ..... 250  
 Playing a disc ..... 210, 225  
 Playing a DVD disc ..... 227, 271  
 Playing a MP3/WMA disc ..... 214, 271  
 Playing a USB memory or iPod ..... 254  
 Playing a video CD ..... 240  
 Playing an audio disc ..... 211, 270  
 POI as a destination ..... 105  
 POI category change ..... 345  
 POI icons hidden ..... 106  
 POI information ..... 36  
 Point of interest button ..... 20, 69  
 POIs near the search point ..... 74  
 POIs to be displayed ..... 103  
 Pop-up information ..... 348  
 Portable audio players ..... 195, 245, 253, 388  
 Preset destination buttons ..... 20, 64  
 Preset destinations ..... 14, 64, 114  
 Presetting a channel ..... 202  
 Presetting a station ..... 197  
 Previous destinations button ..... 20, 76  
 PWR/VOL knob ..... 184, 186

**R**

- Radio data system ..... 198  
 Radio ID ..... 201  
 Radio operation ..... 196, 200, 269  
 RAND button ..... 213, 218, 252, 260  
 RDS ..... 198  
 Rear air conditioning controls ..... 306  
 Rear seat entertainment system controller ..... 264  
 Rear seat entertainment system displays ..... 264  
 Rear seat entertainment system features ..... 263  
 Rear system lock ..... 332  
 Rear window defogger button ..... 296, 298  
 Rear window defogging ..... 310  
 Receive on the Bluetooth® phone ..... 146  
 Receive sports information ..... 164  
 Receive stock data ..... 166

## INDEX

---

Recirculated air mode .....	306	Search by intersection .....	79
Reconnecting Bluetooth® audio player .....	250	Search by name .....	69
Reconnecting the Bluetooth® phone .....	138	Search by phone # .....	74
Region codes .....	243	Search point from along my route .....	72
Registering a Bluetooth® phone .....	352	Search point from near a destination .....	73
Registering address book entries .....	117	Search point from near city center .....	72
Registering areas to avoid .....	123	Search point from near hear .....	72
Registering home .....	12, 111	Searching by group .....	232, 276
Registering portable player .....	390	Searching by title .....	231, 275
Registering preset destinations .....	14, 114	Searching by track .....	242, 283
Registering the phonebook data .....	363	Searching for a desired file .....	217, 259
Registering the speed dial .....	369	Searching for a desired folder .....	218, 259
Registering the voice tag .....	377	Searching for a desired track or disc .....	213
Removing a Bluetooth® audio .....	392	SEEK-TRACK button .....	184, 186
Reordering destinations .....	94	Select button .....	215, 256
Replacing the rear seat entertainment system controller batteries .....	265	Select portable player .....	388
Resume guidance .....	102	Selecting a Bluetooth® phone .....	354
Ring volume .....	350	Selecting a desired album .....	252
Route button .....	10	Selecting a desired disc .....	211, 225
Route features .....	100	Selecting a desired file .....	215, 271
Route guidance screen .....	88	Selecting a desired file or track .....	257
Route overview .....	97	Selecting a desired folder .....	215, 256
Route preference .....	99	Selecting a desired track .....	212, 251, 270
Route preview .....	98	Selecting a keyboard layout .....	332
Route trace .....	106	Selecting a language .....	331
Route trace-start .....	107	Selecting a play mode .....	255
Route trace-stop .....	107	Selecting a satellite radio channel .....	203
Route type .....	99	Selecting a station .....	197
RPT button .....	213, 218, 252, 260	Selecting DVD disc menu item .....	231
<b>S</b>			
Safety Connect .....	154	Selecting portable player connection method .....	390
SAT button .....	184, 186	Selecting the bonus group .....	232, 276
Satellite tuner .....	200	Selecting the menu number .....	277
Scale indicator .....	10	Selecting the search area .....	62
SCAN button .....	197, 203, 213, 217, 218, 259	Sensor detection information .....	325
Screen adjustment .....	31, 286	Sets address book .....	110
Screen configuration button .....	10	Sets area to avoid .....	110
Screen layout function .....	346	Sets home .....	110
Screen off .....	31, 286	Sets preset destinations .....	110
Screen scroll operation .....	34	Setting and deleting destinations .....	94
Screen size .....	194, 285	Setting Bluetooth® audio .....	390
Screens for clock settings .....	335	Setting home as the destination .....	17
Screens for general settings .....	330	Setting route .....	96
Screens for navigation settings .....	341	Setting the phonebook .....	360
Screens for voice settings .....	337	Setting the vehicle interior temperature .....	301, 304
Search area .....	62	Setting the voice tag .....	376
Search by category .....	71	Setting up the address book .....	116
Search by eDestination .....	75	Setting up the areas to avoid .....	122
Search by freeway entrance/exit .....	80	Setting up the home .....	111
		Setting up the preset destinations .....	113
		SETUP button .....	10
		Setup screen .....	22
		Show eDestination icons .....	162
		Show free flowing traffic .....	344

## INDEX

Show on map .....	102	<b>V</b>	
Show on map button .....	10	Vehicle button .....	22
Side monitor .....	316	Vehicle customization .....	400
Single map screen .....	39, 40	Vehicle settings .....	395
Sort .....	30	Video CD .....	240, 281
Sound dynamic range .....	235, 279	Video CD controls .....	242, 282
Sound icons .....	119	Video CD settings .....	241, 282
Speed dial .....	141, 368	Video mode .....	284
Speed dials settings .....	368	Viewer restrictions .....	244
Starting route from adjacent road .....	101	Voice button .....	22
Starting route guidance .....	83	Voice command example .....	47, 50
Steering switches .....	261	Voice command system .....	44
Street address .....	67	Voice guidance speaker .....	339
Subscription .....	155	Voice settings .....	337
Subtitle language .....	235, 279	Voice tag .....	144, 376
Surround function .....	192	Voice volume .....	338, 350
Switching between audio functions .....	190		
Switching the air intake control to automatic mode .....	302		
Switching the screens .....	39		
Symbol key .....	29		
<b>T</b>			
Talk on the Bluetooth® phone .....	146		
Talk switch .....	44, 143	Wide view front & side monitor .....	314
Telephone settings .....	349	Wide view front & side monitor cameras .....	318
Telephone switch .....	130	Wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display .....	316
TEMP button .....	296, 298, 301, 304	Wide view front monitor .....	316
Temperature display .....	296, 298, 312	Windshield air flow button .....	296, 298, 307
Time zone .....	336	Windshield wiper de-icer .....	309
Tire change calibration .....	346, 348	WMA .....	214, 271
Title .....	244		
Tone .....	31, 286		
Tone and balance .....	193		
Touch screen operation .....	27	<b>X</b>	
Traffic announcement .....	200	XM® indicator .....	10
Traffic button .....	200	XM® NavTraffic .....	154, 173
Traffic voice guidance .....	339	XM® NavTraffic icon .....	174
Transferring a phone number .....	361	XM® NavTraffic indicator .....	175
Treble .....	193	XM® NavTraffic information arrow .....	174
TUNE/FILE knob .....	184, 186	XM® NavTraffic text information .....	39
Turn list screen .....	39, 90	XM NavWeather™ .....	168
Turning the audio system on and off .....	189	XM NavWeather button .....	23
TypeSeek button .....	198	XM® Satellite Radio broadcast .....	200
Typical voice guidance prompts .....	91	XM Sports .....	164
		XM Sports button .....	23
		XM Sports settings .....	164
		XM Stocks .....	166
		XM Stocks button .....	23
		XM Stocks settings .....	167
<b>U</b>			
Unit of measurement .....	333		
USB memory operation .....	253	<b>Z</b>	
USB port .....	195	Zoom in button .....	10
		Zoom out button .....	10

Idx